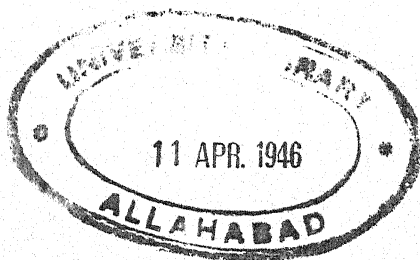


# A HANDBOOK OF PLANT TISSUE CULTURE

BY  
PHILIP R. WHITE, A.B., Ph.D.

58

15



THE JAQUES CATTELL PRESS  
LANCASTER, PENNSYLVANIA

1943

Copyright, 1943, by  
THE JAKES CATTELL PRESS

PRINTED IN U. S. A.  
THE SCIENCE PRESS PRINTING COMPANY  
LANCASTER, PENNSYLVANIA



## DEDICATION

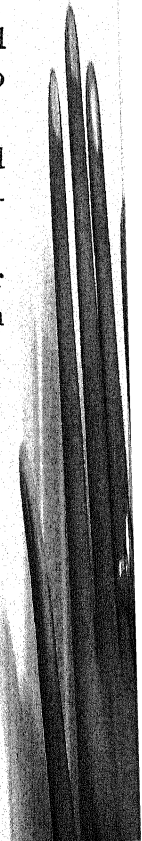
to Henry K. White, to whom I owe a certain curiosity about the workings of nature and whose first lessons in scientific thinking and procedure are the foundation upon which all of my work has since been built,

to Mary P. White, to whom I owe patience and perseverance and what humility I may claim, to carry through the tasks at hand,

to Caroline D. White, whose inspiration and constant help have supported me at many a difficult pass, and

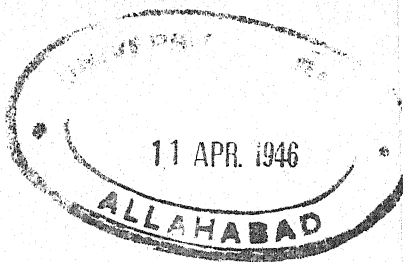
to little Christopher John and Jonathan Peter for whom, after all, all things in heaven and earth are done,

this little volume is humbly dedicated.



“Entia non sunt multiplicandi praeter  
necessitatem”

Wm. of Occam, 1270–1349.



## PREFACE

The writing of any book, and particularly one in a new and special field, should, in these days of stress and in the presence of an already staggering plethora of publication, be a matter for very serious consideration. Books are written to be read, and unless one has at least a potential public one should hesitate long and seriously about bringing out a new volume. Yet the history of Science has been from the first a history of methods, either experimental methods or methods of thought. When, therefore, a new method or a new application of older methods is developed, it behooves those who are responsible for its development to consider carefully when it has progressed far enough beyond adolescence to warrant a formal introduction in society.

Tissue Culture as a branch of animal biology has long since passed that stage and has received extended attention in the handbooks of Fischer, Erdmann, Willmer, Ephrussi, Parker, and others. Many of these handbooks carry titles conveying the impression that they treat the subject in its entirety. Yet it is in vain that one searches their pages for any but the briefest possible treatment of the cultivation of plant tissues. One might

assume that the animal biologists had a strict monopoly on the method. This is, of course, not at all a fair picture. It is with the conviction that Tissue Culture is, in fact, the domain of all biologists and that Plant Tissue Culture has, in the last decade, developed to the point where it deserves and even demands consideration as a separate, valid, useful, and promising, if not yet fully mature, discipline, that I have undertaken the preparation of this little volume.

Having decided that the time is ripe for publication in a new field, an author must then determine the scope of his subject, the type of reader he wishes to reach, and the degree of detail which it is valuable to present. I have planned this book as an aid to those who may actually make use of the technique—students, investigators in other fields for whom the methods presented may be useful in the solution of their own problems, and perhaps a very few who may approach the subject for its own sake. With this in mind, I have tried to keep the presentation as simple and concise as seemed compatible with completeness and lucidity and have used, wherever possible, photographs and drawings in place of long descriptions. I have not attempted an inclusive survey of the field in all its past and present ramifications but have concentrated on those matters which may suggest to the student new fields of conquest and provide him with the basic information and the techniques

necessary to an intelligent approach to those fields. Most of the techniques described are those developed and perfected in my own laboratory, but I have tried also to provide a working outline of other techniques and methods of approach.

One does not prepare a book, even a small one, alone. I should like especially to acknowledge the help of Professor Edmund Sinnott of Yale, Professor George Avery and Miss Bethe Anderson of Connecticut College, Dr. Esther Carpenter of Smith College, Dr. and Mrs. Warren Lewis of the Carnegie Institution, Dr. Frank Thone of Science Service, and Harriet Butler Bunker of Dummerston, Vermont, all of whom examined the early plan, read and criticized the preliminary drafts of the manuscript, made many helpful criticisms and suggestions, and gave me their unstinted encouragement throughout the task. I should like also to express my gratitude to Professor Gottlieb Haberlandt, Dr. Ross Harrison, Dr. Alexis Carrel, Dr. and Mrs. Warren Lewis, Dr. Walter Kotte, and Dr. Roger Gautheret for permission to use their portraits. These will, I hope, add greatly to the living quality of the book. Dr. Gautheret in particular deserves my deepest gratitude for the difficulties and perhaps danger which he overcame in sending me his picture and biography out of war-ridden Paris. I sincerely regret that Dr. W. J. Robbins preferred to have his portrait omitted from the series. The illustrations, with

the exception of these portraits and of figures 1, 2, 3, 4, 14, 15, 35, 39, and 64, are all from my own laboratory and were photographed or drawn by Mr. Julian A. Carlile whose competent help has certainly greatly enhanced whatever value the book may have. My sincere thanks are due him and other members of the technical staff of the Rockefeller Institute for their unfailing cooperation. I should like to thank Dr. James Bonner for the photographs used in figure 35 and John Wiley and Sons for permission to republish figure 22, the original of which I furnished them in 1937. Pictures taken from periodicals and from older books carry their acknowledgments in the text. The bibliography at the end of the book is intended to cover the major contributions in the field of Plant Tissue Cultures and to contain in addition some collateral material from related fields sufficient to suggest to the reader possible interrelations. Corrections, suggestions, and criticisms will, of course, be welcomed.

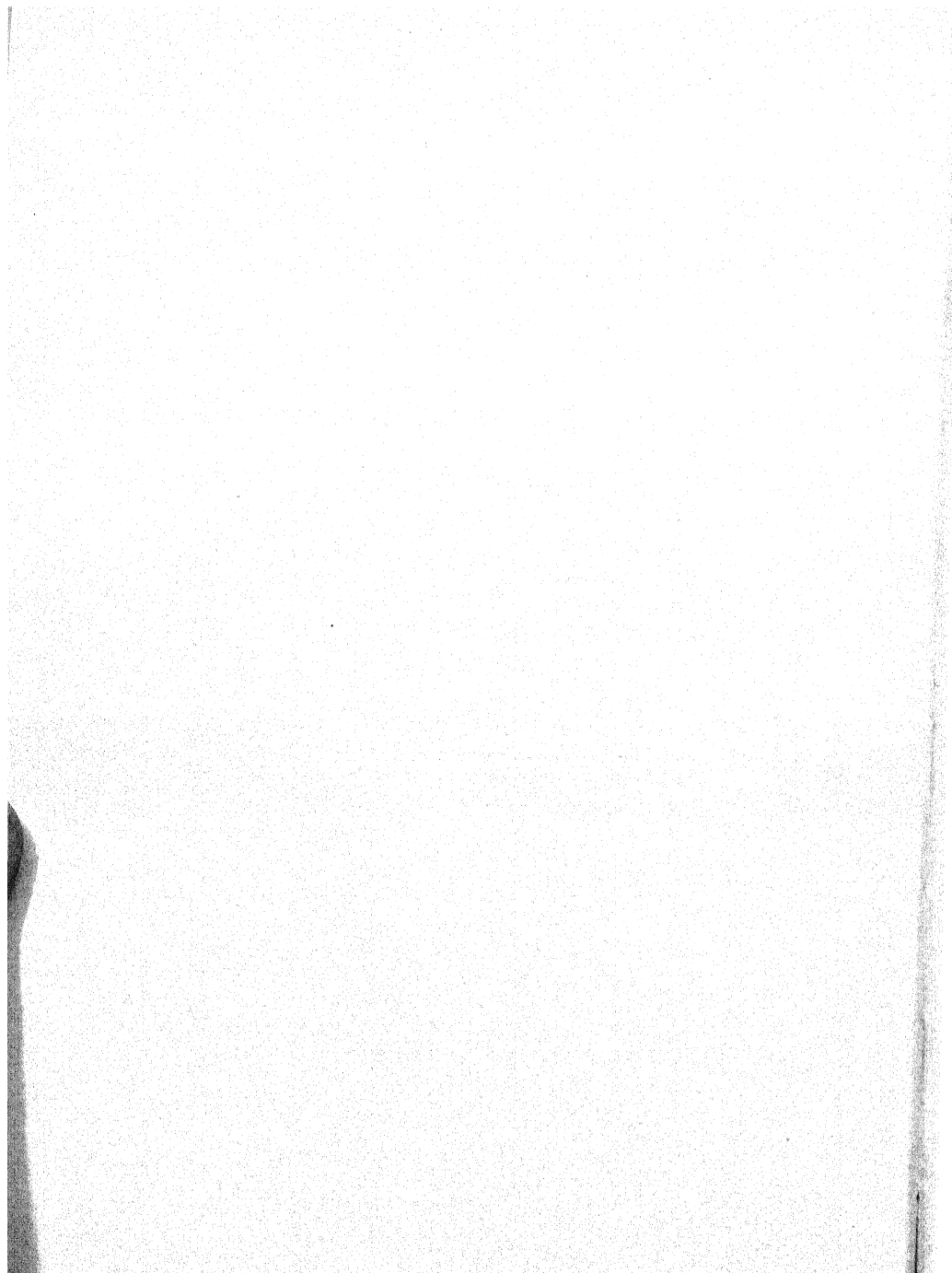
With this brief introduction, I turn my offspring over to the good graces of a critical and exacting, but I trust understanding, public.

Princeton, New Jersey,

September, 1942.

## TABLE OF CONTENTS

|  | PAGE |
|--|------|
| Chapter I. Introduction .....  | 1    |
| Chapter II. The History of Plant Tissue Culture .....  | 19   |
| Chapter III. The Living Materials .....  | 43   |
| Chapter IV. The Laboratory .....   | 67   |
| Chapter V. Nutrients .....   | 90   |
| Chapter VI. How Cultures Are Started .....   | 117  |
| Chapter VII. Culture Techniques .....  | 131  |
| Chapter VIII. Growth Measurements and Their<br>Interpretation .....  | 154  |
| Chapter IX. Tissue Culture and the Study of<br>Problems in the Pathology and General Physi-<br>ology of Plants ..... | 183  |
| Chapter X. Morphogenesis .....   | 209  |
| Bibliography .....   | 227  |
| Index .....  | 262  |





## LIST OF ILLUSTRATIONS

|   | PAGE |
|---|------|
| Fig. 1. Polarity in regeneration of cut tubers of <i>Corydalis</i><br><i>solidia</i> .....                            | 6    |
| Fig. 2. Retention of specific characteristics by grafts of<br>fruits of three varieties of gourds .....               | 13   |
| Fig. 3. Retention of specific characteristics by grafts be-<br>tween two species of tadpoles .....                    | 14   |
| Fig. 4. Production of lens by grafted belly epithelium of a<br>toad, under induction from the eye-cup of a frog ..... | 15   |
| Fig. 5. Gottlieb Haberlandt .....   | 16   |
| Fig. 6. Ross G. Harrison .....  | 23   |
| Fig. 7. Warren H. Lewis .....   | 24   |
| Fig. 8. Margaret R. (Mrs. Warren H.) Lewis .....  | 25   |
| Fig. 9. Alexis Carrel .....   | 26   |
| Fig. 10. W. Kotte .....   | 37   |
| Fig. 11. R. J. Gautheret .....  | 38   |
| Fig. 12. Philip R. White .....  | 39   |
| Fig. 13. Roots of tomato, white clover, and red clover .....  | 40   |
| Fig. 14. Section of seed of <i>Peperomia hispidula</i> .....  | 46   |
| Fig. 15. Undifferentiated embryo of <i>Peperomia hispidula</i> .....  | 47   |
| Fig. 16. Leaves regenerated on root of dandelion .....  | 51   |
| Fig. 17. Cultures of sunflower tissues .....  | 52   |
| Fig. 18. Cultures of <i>Nicotiana</i> callus .....  | 53   |
| Fig. 19. Cultures of bacteria-free crown-gall tissues of sun-<br>flower .....   | 53   |
| Fig. 20. Young embryo of <i>Portulaca oleracea</i> .....  | 54   |
| Fig. 21. Root cap on root of white clover .....   | 61   |
| Fig. 22. Root-hairs on growing excised tomato root .....  | 62   |
| Fig. 23. Root-hairs on growing excised buckwheat root .....   | 63   |
| Fig. 24. Growing excised roots of tomato and buckwheat .....  | 64   |
| Fig. 25. Plan of a laboratory suite .....   | 68   |
| Fig. 26. Week by week increment rates of excised roots over<br>eight years .....                                      | 78   |

|   | PAGE |
|---|------|
| Fig. 27. Diagram of special pierced slide for hanging-drop cultures .....                       | 80   |
| Fig. 28. Implements commonly used in plant tissue culture work .....                            | 85   |
| Fig. 29. Equipment for preparing and transferring cultures .....                                | 86   |
| Fig. 30. Procedure of cutting roots within flasks .....   | 87   |
| Fig. 31. Distributing nutrient to flasks .....  | 87   |
| Fig. 32. Method of obtaining sterile adventitious roots .....                                   | 88   |
| Fig. 33. Excising adventitious roots from cuttings .....  | 88   |
| Fig. 34. Method of obtaining uniform stocks of root tips .....                                  | 113  |
| Fig. 35. Bean pod segments used in testing wound stimulants .....                               | 114  |
| Fig. 36. Removing blocks of cambium from large trees .....                                      | 115  |
| Fig. 37. Procedure in making cultures of cambium .....  | 115  |
| Fig. 38. Cambium culture of <i>Salix caprea</i> .....   | 116  |
| Fig. 39. Surface of cambial cultures of <i>Abies pectinata</i> .....                            | 127  |
| Fig. 40. Measuring a root within the culture flask .....  | 128  |
| Fig. 41. Sample pages from a book of records .....  | 129  |
| Fig. 42. Equipment used in making hanging-drop cultures .....                                   | 130  |
| Fig. 43. Average daily increment rates of 1000 roots during one week <i>in vitro</i> .....      | 141  |
| Fig. 44. Effects of temperature on growth rates of tomato roots .....                           | 145  |
| Fig. 45. Example of a line graph recording daily march of increments of excised roots .....     | 174  |
| Fig. 46. Example of a histogram recording effects of nutrient variables on growth .....         | 175  |
| Fig. 47. Example of an isopleth diagram showing the effects of two simultaneous variables ..... | 176  |
| Fig. 48. Tomato root showing gross effect of indole acetic acid on growth .....                 | 179  |
| Fig. 49. Effects of iron concentration on root growth .....                                     | 180  |
| Fig. 50. Effects of iron concentration on root growth .....                                     | 181  |
| Fig. 51. Detail of the effects of indole acetic acid on cells of an excised root .....          | 182  |
| Fig. 52. Graph showing effects of indole acetic acid on growth rates .....                      | 187  |
| Fig. 53. Graph of rates of water secretion (root pressure) in excised tomato roots .....        | 191  |

# List of Illustrations

xiii

|   | PAGE |
|---|------|
| Fig. 54. Developmental cycle of plastids in cells of <i>Stellaria media</i> .....         | 193  |
| Fig. 55. Region of maturation of excised tomato root .....                                | 195  |
| Fig. 56. Manometer for measuring root pressure .....                                      | 196  |
| Fig. 57. Manometer assembly, detail .....   | 197  |
| Fig. 58. A battery of manometers with attached pressure equipment .....                   | 198  |
| Fig. 59. Titration of distribution of aucuba-mosaic virus in a tomato root .....          | 201  |
| Fig. 60. Tyrosinase distribution in an excised tomato root .....                          | 205  |
| Fig. 61. Hyperhydric enlargement of cells of seed primordia of <i>Antirrhinum</i> .....   | 206  |
| Fig. 62. Meristematic cells in <i>Nicotiana</i> callus culture .....                      | 207  |
| Fig. 63. Scleriform cells in <i>Nicotiana</i> callus culture .....                        | 208  |
| Fig. 64. <i>In vitro</i> grafts of cambium cultures .....                                 | 213  |
| Fig. 65. Cross section of a <i>Nicotiana</i> callus culture .....                         | 214  |
| Fig. 66. Detail from figure 65 .....  | 215  |
| Fig. 67. Disorganized vascular tissue from a sunflower tumor tissue culture .....         | 216  |
| Fig. 68. Formation of stem growing point on a <i>Nicotiana</i> callus culture .....       | 223  |
| Fig. 69. Section showing <i>Nicotiana</i> callus cultivated in a rabbit's eye .....       | 224  |
| Fig. 70. Detail from figure 69 .....  | 225  |
| Fig. 71. Effect of aeration on differentiation of a <i>Nicotiana</i> callus culture ..... | 226  |

"Man kann sich also folgende zwei Vorstellungen von der Ursache der organischen Erscheinungen, des Wachstums usw. machen: Erstens die Ursache liegt in der Totalität des Organismus. . . . Die andere Erklärungsweise ist die: Das Wachstum geschieht nicht durch eine im ganzen Organismus begründete Kraft, sondern jeder einzelne Elementarteil besitzt eine selbständige Kraft, ein selbständiges Leben. . . .

"Wir haben gesehen, dass alle Organismen aus wesentlich gleichen Teilen, nämlich aus Zellen zusammengesetzt sind, dass diese Zellen nach wesentlich denselben Gesetzen sich bilden und wachsen, dass also diese Prozesse überall auch durch dieselben Kräfte hervorgebracht werden müssen. Finden wir nun, dass einzelne dieser Elementarteile, die sich von den übrigen nicht unterscheiden, sich vom Organismus lostrennen und selbständig weiter wachsen können, so können wir daraus schliessen, dass auch jeder der übrigen Elementarteile, jede Zelle für sich schon die Kraft besitzt, neue Moleküle anzuziehen und zu wachsen, dass also jeder Elementarteile eine eigentümliche Kraft, ein selbständiges Leben besitzt vermöge dessen er selbständig sich zu entwickeln imstande wäre, wenn ihm bloss die äusseren Bedingungen dargeboten würden, unter welchen er im Organismus steht. Solche selbständig, getrennt vom Organismus wachsende Zellen sind z. B. die Eier der Tiere. . . . Bei niederen Pflanzen kann sich jede beliebige Zelle von der Pflanze lostrennen und dann selbständig weiter wachsen. Hier bestehen also ganze Pflanzen aus Zellen, deren selbständiges Leben unmittelbar nachweisen lässt. Da nun alle Zellen nach denselben Gesetzen wachsen, also nicht in einem Falle der Grund des Wachstums in der Zelle selbst, im andern Falle im ganzen Organismus liegen kann, da sich ferner nachweisen lässt, dass einzelne, von den übrigen in der Art des Wachstums nicht verschiedene Zellen selbständig sich entwickeln, so müssen wir überhaupt den Zellen ein selbständiges Leben zuschreiben. . . . Dass nicht wirklich jede einzelne Zelle, wenn sie von einem Organismus getrennt wird, weiter wächst, ist gegen diese Theorie so wenig ein Einwurf, als es ein Einwurf gegen das selbständige Leben einer Biene ist, wenn sie getrennt von ihrem Schwarm auf die Dauer nicht fortbestehen kann."

"One can thus construct the following two hypotheses concerning the origin of organic phenomena such as growth: either this origin is a function of the organism as a whole, or growth does not take place by means of any force residing in the entire organism but each elementary part possesses an individual force, a separate life.

"We have seen that all organisms consist of essentially like parts, the cells; that these cells are formed and grow according to essentially the same laws; that these processes are thus everywhere the result of the same forces. If, therefore, we find that some of these elementary parts, which do not differ from others, are capable of being separated from the organism and of continuing to grow independently, we can conclude that each of the other elementary parts, each cell, must possess the capacity to gather new molecules to itself and to grow, that therefore each cell possesses a particular force, an independent life, as a result of which it too would be capable of developing independently if only there be provided the external conditions under which it exists in the organism. The eggs of animals are in fact such cells, capable of living separated from the organism. Among the lower plants any cell can be separated from the plant and continue to grow. Thus, entire plants may consist of cells whose capacity for independent life can be clearly demonstrated. Now, since all cells grow according to the same laws so that it is not possible that in one case the cause of growth lies in the cell itself while in another case it lies in the entire organism, and since moreover it can be demonstrated that single cells whose growth does not differ from that of other cells can develop independently, we must therefore ascribe an independent life to the cell as such. That not every cell, when separated from the organism does in fact grow is no more an argument against this theory than is the fact that a bee soon dies when separated from its swarm, a valid argument against the individual life of the bee."

## CHAPTER I

### INTRODUCTION

In the whole gamut of human thought, there is perhaps no question that crops up more frequently in one form or another than that which asks "By what means do the myriads of different forms and processes which we see in the Universe around us come into being, what controls them within normal metes and bounds, and how does it come about that those 'normal' bounds are occasionally transcended, so often with disastrous results? What is it that brings about and maintains the extraordinary harmony which we usually find in Nature, yet from time to time alters that harmony by what appear to us to be transgressions?" If we knew the full answers to the multitudinous variants of this question, there would be very little left worth inquiring about.

For this question does have a multitude of variants. It is asked at all sorts of different levels of human experience. At the cosmic level it becomes the question of creation itself. The psychologist asks it at the level of human thought

and behavior. The sociologist asks it at the level of races and nations, tribes, sects, and societies. The chemist asks it at the level of "substances" and the physicist at the level of material bodies great or small, be they galaxies or particles of light. The geneticist and taxonomist ask it concerning the segregation and delimitation of characters of related organisms. With regard to single organisms, we ask "How is it that the size, form, texture, rate of development, function of the various parts are determined and limited? Why does an anterior limb-bud give rise to a hand while a posterior limb-bud gives rise to a foot? Why does a cell of a given type, when chance places it in one region of the body, become an element of the glandular epithelium of the kidney, while in another part of the body the same type of cell appears as a constituent of the iris? Why does the sub-epidermal cell of a foliar leaf become a center of food synthesis, while in a floral leaf it becomes a megaspore-mother-cell with a reproductive function? Why do the cells surrounding a wound in a "normal" individual take part in an orderly granulation, closing the wound, forming well-limited scar tissue, organizing a harmonious replacement of the injured regions, while in an individual carrying a cancer, even at some distant part of the body, cells of the same region may

be detonated into an explosive, disordered, disharmonious, and ultimately self-destroying overgrowth?" The factors which control these characteristics of size, form, function, and rate of development of living organisms, which maintain at all times the proper balance among their parts, and which, when disturbed, result in creatures of abnormal type, constitute the materials of that important branch of biological science which we call "morphogenesis."

Science progresses in five main steps. First, there is the observation of more or less evident facts, their codification and analysis. Second, there is the formulation of ideas and principles based on these facts and their arrangement into working hypotheses. Third, there is the development of techniques for the testing of these hypotheses. Fourth, there is the acquiring through use of these techniques of pertinent but less evident information, the verification, modification, and refinement of these hypotheses, until they themselves become facts. And fifth, there is the integration of these latterly acquired larger facts into the general picture. In the study of living organisms, one of the early observed "facts" was the ubiquity of those units which we call cells. Information about cells, acquired by general observation, very early led to the formulation of the

fundamental hypothesis of the so-called "cell theory," promulgated a century ago in the words which are set at the head of this chapter (Schwann, 1839, 29,\* that all cells are essentially elementary organisms, theoretically alike and capable of autonomous existence. But there is an alternative hypothesis which also rests upon a considerable mass of observed facts, namely, that somewhere in the developmental history of an organism its constituent cells cease to be totipotent, by segregation and loss of certain functions. No mechanism is known by which such segregation or loss can take place, yet it so often appears to have taken place that this alternative hypothesis has today many adherents.

If all cells of an organism are essentially alike and, within the genetic pattern, totipotent, then the differences in behavior of cells of a given type in different situations in the body must result from the interrelations of these cells with their environments and with other cells in the organism. It should be possible to restore suppressed functions by isolating the cell from those external influences which were responsible for the suppression. If, on the other hand, there has been a true segregation and loss of function so that the cells are, in the mature organism, no longer totipotent,

\* *Italic numbers refer to bibliography.*



then no modification of a given cell-line's environment could hope to restore the lost functions. It is clear that a decision between these two alternative hypotheses is essential to any valid notion of the origin of form and function. And it is also clear that one of the most promising techniques for arriving at such a decision lies in the segregation of cells, tissues, and organs from the associated members of the body and their maintenance and study as isolated units, under as nearly optimal and as fully controlled conditions as possible. The attempt to reduce an organism to its constituent cells and to study these cells as elementary organisms is thus a project of fundamental importance in the solution of basic biological questions.

Schleiden (1838, 27) and Schwann (1839, 29), who formulated the concept of cellular totipotency, and Virchow (1858, 433), who popularized that concept, made no attempt to put it to experimental test. A half century elapsed between its formulation and the first well-organized experimental study of the question. In the 1870's, several workers attacked the problem, no one with more lucidity and patience than Vöchting. Vöchting chose two methods of approach. First, he dissected plants into smaller and smaller fragments, studying the phenomena of polarity in these fragments. ✓ He found "polarity" to be a character-

istic of every fragment, irrespective of size, and hence by implication of the individual cells (1878, 329, 1884, 329). Thus, the distal portion of a stem or piece of stem always produced leaves and the proximal portion roots, but whether a given cell

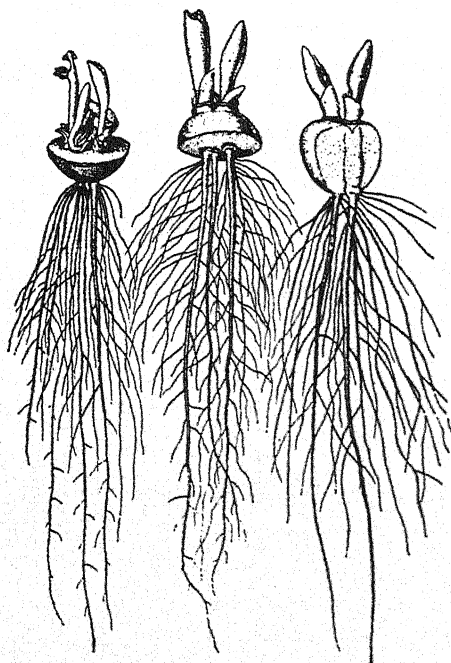


FIG. 1. Tubers of *Corydalis solida*, cut and allowed to regenerate. The tissues at the center of the tuber form leaves (left), roots (center), or merely wound callus (right), depending on the spatial orientation of the cut, showing the dependence of morphogenetic expression on fortuitous external factors. (From Goebel, K. 1908. Einleitung in die experimentelle Morphologie der Pflanzen. 220, fig. 111, 293.)

produced leaves or roots depended on that cell's fortuitous position, whether distal to or proximal to the nearest cut surface or uninjured growing point. If a three-foot piece of willow was left intact, the distal foot of stem would produce only roots, but if a six-inch piece was isolated from the distal end of such a stem either by removal or merely by severing the bark, the proximal three inches of this piece would produce leaves instead of roots. Later observations by von Goebel (1908, 293) (Fig. 1) Schwanitz (1935, 323) and others led to similar conclusions. Here the morphogenetic pattern was a function of the "organism as a whole" (considering here the autonomous fragment as the organism), of the relationships of cell to cell within the particular tissue continuum. The cell appeared to be totipotent, its actual expressed function being a resultant of the influences coming from outside. Vöchting's second approach involved the age-old method of grafting (Fig. 2) or transplantation (1892, 330, 1894, 331) and merely confirmed what had been known from time immemorial, that no matter what the environment or host into which a scion was transplanted, it always developed in a given pattern which was fixed by the species from which it came. Not only was the developmental pattern fixed, but the physiological behavior was also fixed by the spe-

cies and could not be altered by contact with or even dependence on the tissues of another species (Vöchting, 1894, 331). The transplantation experiments demonstrated the restrictions which species places on the *potencies* of a cell. The dissection experiments demonstrated the essential *totipotency* of the cell within these species limitations. Similar conclusions may be drawn from experiments with animal materials (Figs. 3, 4).

To carry this method of dissection to its logical end, we would have to go to the cells themselves, as we have already said. Implicit in Schleiden and Schwann's concept, subjected to a preliminary pragmatic test by Vöchting, this idea seems nevertheless not to have been explicitly formulated as a basis for planning experiments with either plant or animal materials until much later. In the early years of the present century, Haberlandt (1902, 98) (Fig. 5) set forth the principle frankly and lucidly in the words that I have placed at the head of Chapter II. He then proceeded methodically to fill the gap in our knowledge, the existence of which he had called to our attention. He set out to grow cells and small groups of cells in suitable nutrients and to study their behavior. The discipline which Haberlandt thus outlined is that which, in the four decades since his paper, has gradually crystallized into what we know today

as "tissue cultures." (See Harrison, 1928, 18). (See also references 1-41.)

But it is not always given to one individual both to formulate the broad outlines of a new technique and to put that technique into actual practice. Haberlandt was faced at the start with a series of major difficulties inherent in plant anatomy and morphogenesis which it has actually taken workers a third of a century to learn to overcome. These difficulties are chiefly three. In the first place, most cells of a plant are not bathed in any free, complete nutrient medium. The xylem sap lacks many of the organic constituents needed to maintain life. The phloem sap is in direct contact with only a very few specialized cells. Most plant cells must obtain a large part of their nutriment by diffusion *through* neighboring cells. There is no "natural" nutrient which can be extracted from a plant and used for the cultivation of its cells and for subsequent analysis. In the second place, most plant cells, with rare exceptions, are surrounded by a rigid pellicle. This prevents the cells from seeking and engulfing food, thus greatly restricting the forms of food which they can use. It prevents their adhering satisfactorily to any solid substratum. And, since excision involves rupturing this pellicle and exposing the protoplast naked to the surrounding

medium in a way that seldom occurs in nature, it greatly increases the shock which any cell must inevitably suffer in the process of removing it from the body. In the third place, "growth," in the plant, is normally restricted to a few specialized regions of the body, leaving all other parts in an essentially inert condition, as far as capacity for continued cell multiplication is concerned, and greatly restricting the experimenter in his choice of materials. As a result of these difficulties, although the problem has been investigated by a considerable number of workers, more than 30 years elapsed between Haberlandt's formulation of the tissue culture concept and the first really successful experiments with plant tissue cultures.

Fortunately for the development of the field as a whole, however, animal tissues present none of the above-named difficulties, at least to anything like a comparable degree. In the first place, animal cells throughout the body *are* regularly bathed in one or both of two characteristic and essentially complete nutrient fluids, the blood and lymph. These can be easily removed from the body in large quantity. They serve as basic "natural" nutrients for animal cells in which such cells can be immersed without serious shock. They can be analyzed at leisure to determine which of their constituents are truly essential. In the second

place, animal cells are for the most part surrounded by a tough but mobile pellicle in place of the rigid pellicle of the plant cell. Animal cells can therefore be removed from the body with a minimum of shock. Anyone who has worked with both types will appreciate this difference. Animal cells adhere well to a variety of solid substrata. They are capable of autonomous movement and phagocytosis, so that they can be fed on relatively complex nutrient materials which they themselves transform into constituents which can pass readily into the protoplasts. And finally, "growth" of the animal body regularly takes place in all parts of the body and, in the sense of replacement, throughout the life of the animal. There is thus comparatively little obvious restriction placed on the experimenter in choosing favorable materials for cultivation. These facts have largely affected the progress of tissue cultures in the two living kingdoms and are responsible for the early success in the animal field. Plant tissue cultures have only within the last half decade reached anything like a comparable position.

#### SUMMARY

The question of the origin of form and function in our Universe is one of the most fundamental problems to the solution of which man has set his

intellect. As regards living organisms, this problem embraces everything that we include under the name of "morphogenesis." Since the cell is theoretically the ultimate unit of structure in living organisms, the question of the origin of form and function in living beings may be stated thus: "Are the factors which determine these characteristics *external* to the individual cell (in which case the cell is *totipotent* but its particular expression comes about through a potentially reversible suppression of some of its potencies due to its *spatial* association with other cells), or are they *internal*, in the individual cell (in which case the cell is obviously *not* totipotent but has lost some of its potencies at some point in the sequence of events which constitute its *temporal* association with other cells)?" One method of deciding between these two possibilities lies in the isolation and cultivation of individual cells as separate units or elementary organisms. The technique of isolating and studying cells in this way has, in the last four decades, become established as the technique of "tissue culture."



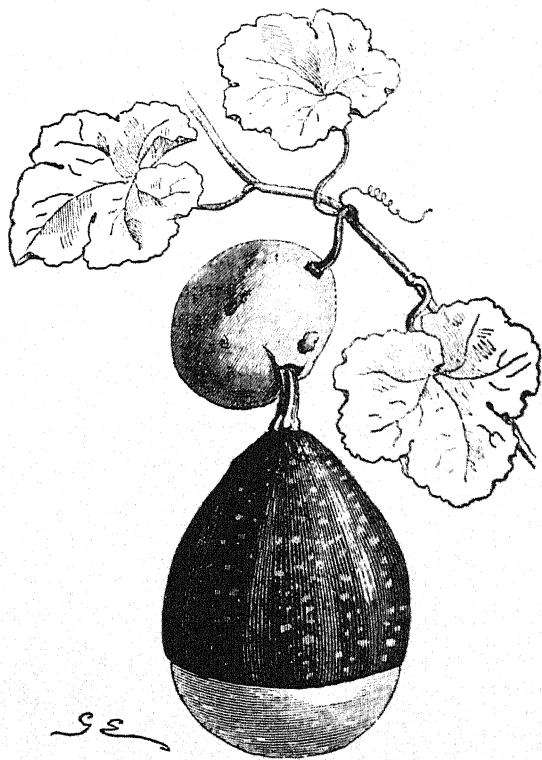


FIG. 2. Ovary segments of three varieties of gourds (*à fruits jaunes*, above; *poire verte*, center; *à fruits blancs*, below) grafted together. Each variety retains its specific characteristics, although in intimate anatomical and physiological contact with the tissues of other varieties. The portion *à fruits blancs* must obtain all its nutriment through the tissues of two other varieties, yet remains unaffected by this fact. The dependence of morphogenetic *capacity* on strictly hereditary internal factors is clearly shown. (From Carrière, E. A. 1875. *Rev. Horticole* 1875: 14-16, 278.)

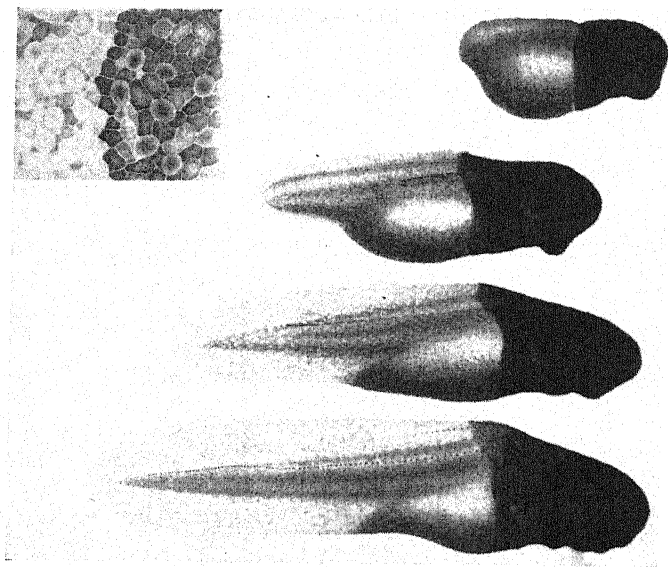


FIG. 3. Segments of larvae of *Rana palustris* (left) and *R. sylvatica* (right) having different pigmentation, grafted together in the early embryonic stages. Each retains its own specific characteristics in intimate anatomical and physiological contact with the other. At the right, progressive stages in development. At the upper left, histological detail of the region of union between the two. Compare with Fig. 2. (From Harrison, R. G. 1904. Ark. mik. Anat. 63: 35-149, 413.)

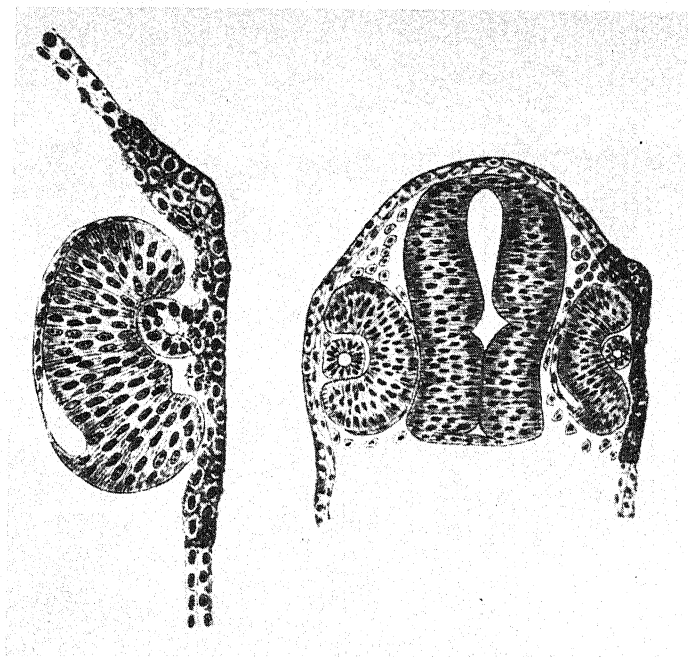
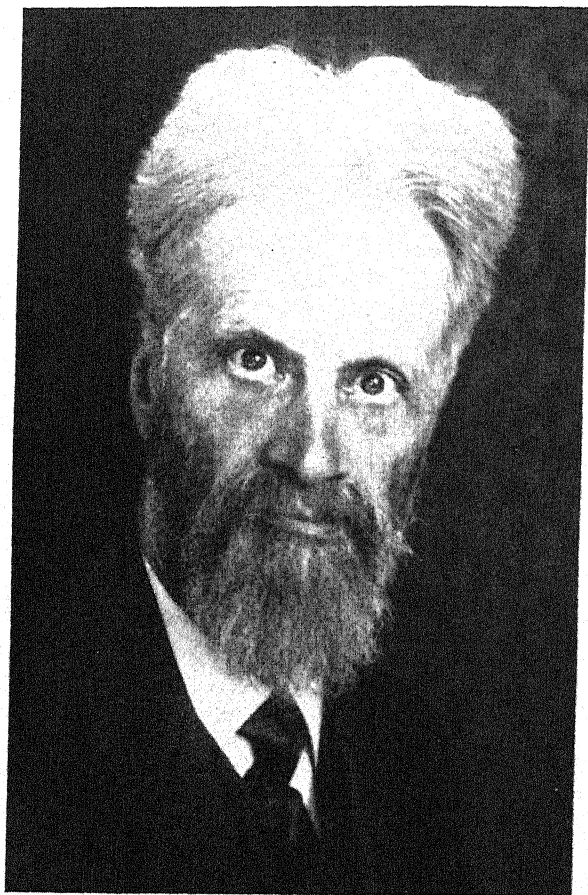
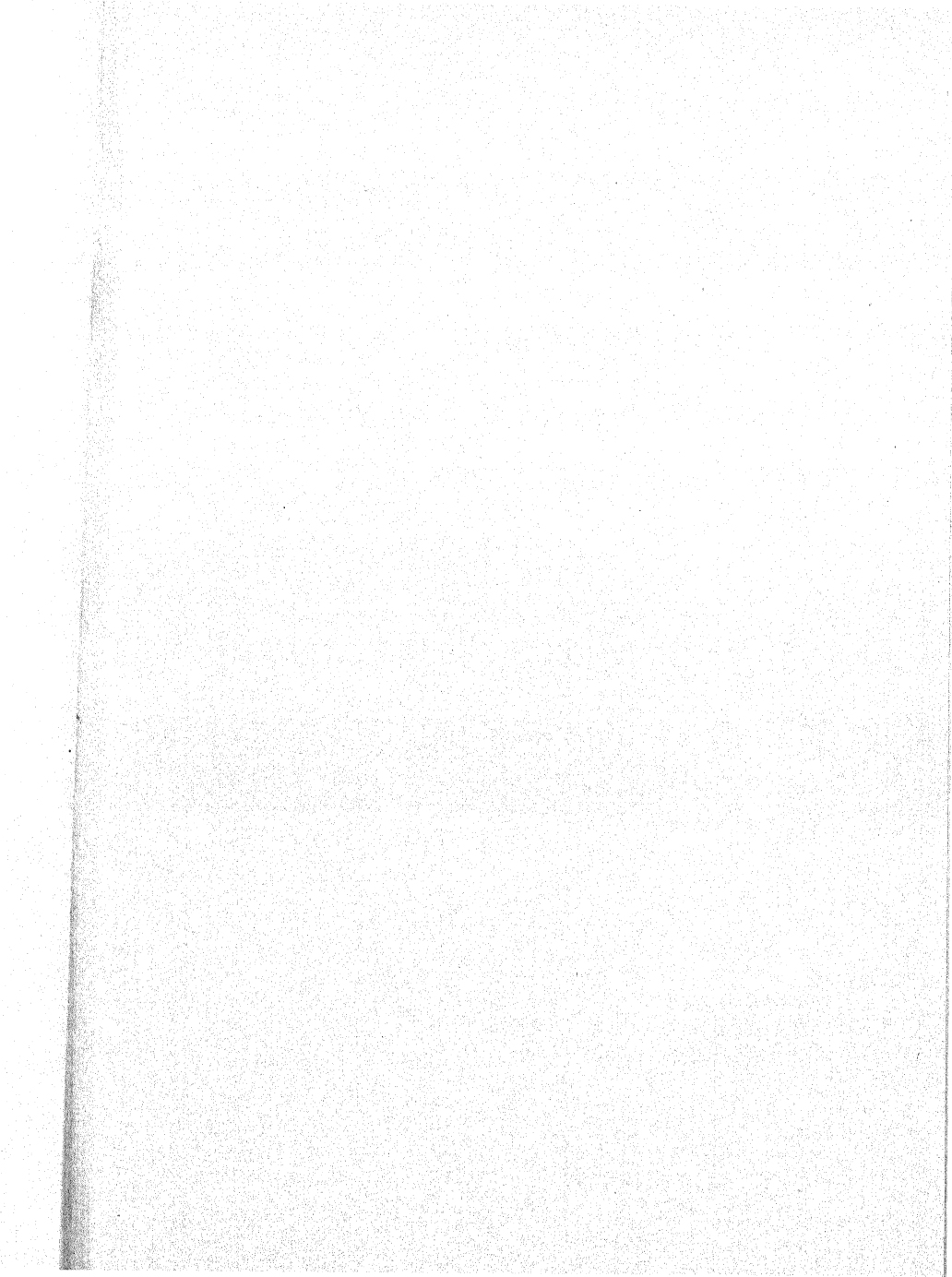


FIG. 4. Results of grafting belly epithelium from a toad embryo (*Bufo vulgaris*) onto the eye region of an embryo of a frog (*Rana esculenta*). Here the grafted epithelium has formed, due to its spatial relationship to the eye-cup of the host, a lens. Since eyes are never normally present in the belly of the toad, this result shows that belly epithelium possesses a potency (the lens-forming potency) which, while never normally expressed, can be evoked by suitable circumstances. The *species* characteristics of the transplant (melanotic pigmentation) remain determined by the source, but the morphological characteristics have been determined by the host. At the right, cross section of entire head region. At the left, detail of the right-hand eye showing the transplant. (From Filatow, D. 1925. Arch. entw. mech. Org. 105: 475-482, 402.)



*G. Haberlandt*

FIG. 5. Gottlieb Haberlandt, 1854- . Professor Emeritus, Pflanzenphysiologisches Institut der Universität, Berlin-Dahlem, Germany. First to formulate specifically the concept of tissue cultures.



"Es sind meines Wissens nach bisher noch keine planmässig angelegten Versuche gemacht worden, isolierte vegetative Zellen von höher entwickelten Pflanzen in geeigneten Nährlösungen zu kultivieren. Und doch müssten die Ergebnisse solcher Kulturversuche manches interessante Streiflicht auf die Eigenschaften und Fähigkeiten werfen die die Zelle als Elementarorganismus in sich birgt: sie müssten Aufschlüsse bringen über die Wechselbeziehungen und gegenseitigen Beeinflussungen denen die Zellen innerhalb des vielzelligen Gesamtorganismus ausgesetzt sind."

"There has been, so far as I know, up to the present, no planned attempt to cultivate the vegetative cells of higher plants in suitable nutrients. Yet the results of such attempts should cast many interesting sidelights on the peculiarities and capacities which the cell, as an elementary organism, possesses: they should make possible conclusions as to the interrelations and reciprocal influences to which the cell is subjected within the multicellular organism."

G. HABERLANDT. 1902, 98. p. 69.

## CHAPTER II

### THE HISTORY OF PLANT TISSUE CULTURE

The science of plant tissue cultures has had a long but tenuous history. It would be difficult to assign an exact date for the "first step" in its development. Certainly, as we have seen, the idea of cultivating fragments of plants was implicit in much that was done in the 19th century. Rechinger, in 1893, 108, seems to have been the first to investigate experimentally the "minimum limit" of divisibility of plant parts, using isolated buds of *Populus nigra*, *Fraxinus Ornus*, roots of *Beta vulgaris*, *Brassica rapa*, sections of stems of *Pothos celatocaulis*, *Coleus arifolia*, and many other materials. He concluded that pieces less than 20 mm. thick would only rarely regenerate entire plants and that some vascular tissue must be included in the fragments cultivated. But in this work he used no nutrient solutions, "growing" his cultures on sand moistened with tap water. These were scarcely "tissue cultures" in any real sense.

A decade later, as we have seen, the real problem was clearly formulated for the first time by Haberlandt (1902, 98) (Fig. 5). Where Reehinger had sought to determine the limits of divisibility of plant materials, Haberlandt boldly took his point of departure directly from the cell theory and assumed that down to the cell level there were no limits of divisibility. He, therefore, chose to work with single cells, an aim which we now look upon as an elusive and as yet unattained ideal. Further, Haberlandt fully appreciated the importance of the photosynthetic process to all living material and consequently conceived the idea that, since most plants contain green cells, by cultivating these particular cells the necessity for providing carbohydrate in the nutrient would be eliminated and the problem of technique simplified. In this he apparently lost sight of the fact that green cells are, for the most part, relatively mature and highly differentiated cells which have, to a great extent, lost their meristematic functions. This "simplification" led him to work with palisade cells of *Lamium*, pith cells from the petioles of *Eichhornia crassipes*, glandular hairs of *Pulmonaria*, stamen hairs of *Tradescantia*, stinging hairs of *Urtica*, stomatal guard cells of *Ornithogalum*, and many other similar materials. The results were, without exception, disappointing



and the attempt to attack the problem directly was regretfully abandoned for another decade with the remark that

“Jedenfalls dürfte die Methode der Züchtung isolierter Pflanzenzellen in Nährlösungen verschiedene wichtige Probleme von einer neuen Seite her der experimentellen Bearbeitung zugänglich machen.”

“At any rate, the method of cultivating isolated plant cells in nutrient solution should make possible the experimental study of many important problems from a new point of view.”  
(1902, 98)

Haberlandt turned to an indirect approach, that of the study of wound healing (1913, 294, 1914, 295, 1919, 245, 296, 1920, 297, 1921, 354, 1922, 355), and has never returned to the original problem.

It was during this unfruitful first decade of the 20th century that the sister science of animal tissue cultures saw its initiation and greatest development. Harrison (Fig. 6) in 1907 succeeded in settling an old controversy by just the methods suggested by Haberlandt, when he cultivated the neuroblast of the frog in clotted lymph (1907, 131, 1908, 132, 1910, 414). He followed the presentation of his experimental results with a brilliant exposé of the possibilities of this method of approach. Two years later Burrows studied with Harrison, subsequently joined Carrel, and together these two established the present-day method of cultivating excised animal tissues in a nutrient made up of blood plasma and embryo

juice or their equivalents (Burrows, 1910, 117, 118, 1911, 119; Carrel, 1911, 120, 1912, 121-125, 1913, 190; Carrel and Burrows, 1910, 128). The method outlined in 1913 by Carrel (Fig. 9) has changed only in minor details since that date.

Carrel and Burrows' method of cultivating animal cells in a blood-plasma embryo-juice nutrient, while relatively simple and easily duplicable, has not led to any exact knowledge of the nutrient requirements of such cells and tissues. Blood plasma and embryo juice are organic complexes of unknown constitution, and such attempts as have been made to elucidate their makeup have not been especially successful (Baker, 1929, 233, 1933, 183; Baker and Carrel, 1925, 195, 1926, 184, 185, 1927, 186, 1928, 187-189; Carrel and Baker, 1926, 191; Ebeling, 1921, 192; Fischer and Demuth, 1928, 194). Nor have the attempts at a synthesis of a nutrient, led by Dr. and Mrs. Warren H. Lewis (Figs. 7, 8) in this country and Dr. A. H. Drew in England been much more successful in eliminating the unknowns (Baker, 1936, 234; Drew, 1922, 145, 1923, 146; M. R. Lewis, 1916, 148; M. R. and W. H. Lewis, 1911, 149-151, 1912, 152, 153; W. H. Lewis, 1921, 154, 1923, 155, 1929, 156; Vogelaar and Erlichmann, 1933, 162, 1934, 163, 164, 1936, 235, 1937, 236, 1939, 165). The cultivation of animal tissues is still an empirical science.



*Ross G. Harrison*

FIG. 6. Ross G. Harrison, 1870- . Professor Emeritus, Osborn Zoological Laboratory, Yale University, New Haven, Connecticut. First to carry out successful cultures of excised animal tissues.



*Warren H. Lewis*

FIG. 7. Warren H. Lewis, 1870- . Emeritus Associate, The Carnegie Institution of Washington. One of the first to investigate the behavior of animal tissue cultures in media of known constitution.



*Margaret Reed Lewis*

FIG. 8. Margaret R. (Mrs. Warren H.) Lewis, 1881- . Research Associate, The Carnegie Institution of Washington. Investigator of animal tissue cultures, particularly of malignant tissues.



*alexis carrel*

FIG. 9. Alexis Carrel, 1873- . Member Emeritus, The Rockefeller Institute for Medical Research, New York City. First to develop a method of maintaining animal tissues in culture for unlimited periods.

Attempts were, of course, made to duplicate Carrel's and Lewis' brilliant results, with plant tissues, by use of some "natural" nutrient comparable to embryo juice. All such attempts, with one possible exception, have consistently failed. Schmucker, in 1929, 110, reported that he had successfully grown individual leaf-mesophyll cells of *Bocconia* in a fluid prepared from a filtered extract of *Bocconia* leaves. Details were apparently never published, the work has not been verified by any later worker, and the result is so at variance with all other recorded experiments that its correctness is to be doubted. In the hands of other workers, all preparations of tissue juices, xylem sap, phloem exudate, liquid endosperm, etc., have given evidence of toxicity (Prát, 1927, 451; Robbins, 1922, 177; Robbins and V. B. White, 1937, 178\*). This has, of course, forced workers in the plant tissue culture field to resort to the much more tedious, difficult, and uncertain, but at the same time when successful more satisfying method of developing step by step an essentially synthetic medium.

The profound influence of Haberlandt's wide reputation determined the subsequent orientation

\* van Overbeek, Conklin and Blakeslee have reported successful use of coconut milk as a nutrient for *Datura* embryos, too late for the reference to be included in the bibliography of this volume. (Science 94: 350-351, 1941).

of the majority of investigations concerned with the cultivation of plant tissues for a quarter of a century and, while animal tissue culture studies were making rapid strides, plant studies were for the most part wandering in what we now look upon as blind alleys. Smith in 1907, 325, Bobiliooff-Preisser in 1917, 90, Lamprecht in 1918, 102, 103, Thielman in 1924, 111, and 1925, 112, 113, Börger, 92, and Czech, 93, in 1926, Kunkel, 101, and Prát, 451, in 1927, Úlehla, 115, and Kemmer, 99, in 1928, Pfeiffer, 107, and Scheitterer, 109, in 1931, five of them students of Haberlandt, all attempted to grow cells of mature type. The materials studied included leaf fragments of *Peperomia*, *Bryophyllum*, *Kalanchoë*, *Crassula*, *Sempervivum*, *Allium*, *Polypodium*, *Aspidium*, *Dicranum*, *Begonia*, *Triticum*, *Pisum*, *Tradescantia*, etc., epidermis of *Viola*, *Thunbergia*, *Rhoeo*, stem tissues of *Solanum*, *Brassica*, *Saintpaulia*, *Coleus*, *Daucus*, young ovaries of *Cucurbita*, pith cells of *Symphoricarpos*, and a variety of other plant parts. All gave equally unsatisfactory results. Küster, in 1928, 20, considered the problem hopeless ("aussichtslos") and asked if perhaps the assumption that cells are totipotent might not itself be false. There was, indeed, much evidence from a variety of sources which appeared to be contrary to this assumption. Not the least indicative of these evidences came



from the field of animal tissue cultures. Fibroblasts, when grown in culture, not only always maintained their characters as fibroblasts, but retained growth rates which were characteristic of the particular tissues or organs from which they had been excised (Parker, 1931, 421, 1932, 422-424, 1933, 425, 426). Epithelial cells also continued true to type (Ebeling, 1924, 389, 1925, 390; Ebeling and Fischer, 1922, 391; Fischer, 1922, 403, 404, 1929, 408). These results conveyed the impression that somewhere in the ontogeny of the individual animal the potential capacities of the cells had been segregated, only "fibroblast characters" being retained by fibroblasts and "epithelium characters" by epithelium. This impression has been so emphasized by much recent biological work that the older concept of the cell as an "elementary organism" and the plant or animal as a "society of cells" has fallen into disrepute and has, to a considerable extent, given way to the modern concept of the "organism as a whole." The cell has come to be looked upon as a more or less fortuitous structural element without any fundamental importance except as one means out of several by which the integrations of the whole may be attained.

There nevertheless remains much indisputable evidence which seems to point to the importance

of the cell as a physiological entity and to its fundamental totipotency. The whole gene mechanism, as exemplified in somatic cells, seems to lose its meaning without this concept. The regeneration of leaves and roots from tissues which are neither leaf nor root points to the existence of capacities which are called forth only by exceptional circumstances. Vöchting's dissection experiments suggest a similar explanation. Spemann and his followers have obtained in their transplantation experiments striking support of this concept, for, while a piece of epithelium of a melanotic amphibian is always melanotic (species specific) in whatever host it may be grown (Fig. 3), it may form tail, or mouth, or eyelid, depending on the position in the body in which it is placed (Fig. 4) (Harrison, 1904, 413; Filatow, 1925, 402; Spemann, 1936, 431; Schotté, 1932, 430). Some transformations such as, for example, that from fibroblast to macrophage are also known to take place in animal tissue cultures (Ebeling and Fischer, 1922, 391; Fischer, 1925, 406, 1926, 407). There thus still seems to be much evidence to support Haberlandt's original concept and to lend support to the hope that, while excised plant cells have not yet been grown *in vitro* with the facility which Haberlandt appears to have anticipated, they will eventually be so grown. Such is the

basis for the continued study of the subject of "plant tissue cultures."

Haberlandt's influence, while tending to orient the subject in a fundamentally unfruitful direction, nevertheless did keep interest in the field alive. Moreover, Haberlandt was a sound enough scientist to see that there were other possible orientations and to encourage them even though he did not recognize their full value. In 1922 one of his students, Kotte, 51, 52, (Fig. 10) made the first important experimental contribution to the subject. Kotte chose to work not with single, green, mature cells, but with colorless meristems, excised root tips. His motivation in this choice, although not very clearly formulated, appears to have been similar to that which oriented the present writer's choice of material a decade later (White, 1931, 32, 1932, 89), namely, their meristematic character, their ease of excision and consequent relative freedom from trauma, and the considerable variety of their normal physiological responses. Kotte succeeded in cultivating excised root tips of pea and maize in a variety of nutrients. These all contained the salts of a dilute Knop solution. To these were added various combinations of glucose, peptone, asparagin, alanine, glycine, Liebig's meat extract, a pepsin-diastrase digest of pea seeds, etc. The most satisfactory results, in

which normal development and response were maintained for considerable periods, were obtained in a solution containing, besides the salts, 1 per cent dextrose plus 5 g. Liebig's meat extract per liter. The work was well planned, excellently carried out, and, as we can now see, of considerable promise, but no subcultures were attempted, Haberlandt apparently overlooked its importance, and no attempt seems to have been made to follow it up. By one of those coincidences which often crop up in science, Robbins in the United States, following the leadership of Jacques Loeb (Robbins, 1939, 220; Loeb, 1915, 302, 1916, 23, 303, 1917, 304, 305, 1918, 306, 1924, 24) and Louis Knudson (Knudson, 1916, 168, 1919, 100; Knudson and Smith, 1919, 169), simultaneously and independently carried out similar work with comparable results (Robbins, 1922, 57). His method differed from Kotte's chiefly in the use of yeast extract in place of Liebig's meat extract. Robbins (1922, 177) and his colleague, Maneval (Robbins and Maneval, 1923, 59, 1924, 258) carried their work somewhat further than did Kotte and, by using subcultures, succeeded in maintaining cultures for some 20 weeks. But in every series, there set in a gradual diminution in growth rate and all cultures were ultimately lost. The results seemed to suggest that some unknown material

not present in the nutrient might be essential for continued growth. The work was dropped and was not resumed by Robbins for another decade. Somewhat analogous studies were made by Chambers in 1923, 43, 44, Mayer in 1929, 138, Heidt in 1931, 50, and Malyshev in 1932, 53, 54.

The ideas originally outlined by Haberlandt and given their first really encouraging investigation by Kotte and Robbins, passed then to other hands and have seen considerable fruition since 1930. Progress since that date has been largely under the leadership of two workers, in France and in the United States. Gautheret (Fig. 11), a student of Guilliermond and disciple of Molliard, carried out a great many investigations in the field of "plant tissue cultures" in the years 1930-1940. Studies similar to those of Kotte with excised root tips were without marked success (Gautheret, 1932, 48, 1933, 49, 95, 96, 1935, 15, 1937, 242, 1939, 97). But simultaneous studies using cambium from large trees were much more promising. He succeeded in growing cambium tissues for considerable periods (Gautheret, 1934, 67, 1935, 15, 1937, 68, 1938, 69, 70, 1939, 71, 72, 1940, 73), in producing *in vitro* grafts (1935, 15, 1937, 16), and in learning a great deal about the nutrient requirements of such tissues. With the work of his compatriot Nobécourt (Nobécourt, 1937, 74, 1938, 75,

76, 1939, 77; Nobécourt and Dusseau, 1938, 311), and with White's (Fig. 12) independent work in America, these studies have led to the first really successful prolonged cultivation of undifferentiated plant tissues (White, 1939, 78, 333). At about the same time that Gautheret's work was initiated, the author of this volume, under the influence of Dr. and Mrs. Warren H. Lewis and of the late Professor Duncan S. Johnson, began at the Johns Hopkins University an intensive study of the whole problem of plant tissue cultures. The methods of approach finally adopted as most promising, although developed independently, came to resemble superficially those of Kotte and Robbins on the one hand and of Gautheret on the other (White, 1931, 32, 1932, 63, 89, 1933, 64, 116, 141, 142). These studies led in 1934 to the first prolonged cultivation of excised roots (White, 1934, 65), to the development of satisfactory synthetic culture media in 1937 (White, 1937, 141, 143, 144, 180, 181, 231, 1939, 182, 1940, 172, 173, 232), and to the prolonged cultivation of undifferentiated plant tissues in 1939 (White, 1939, 78). The work of Bonner (Bonner, 1937, 198, 1938, 199, 1940, 201; Bonner and Addicott, 1937, 42), Fiedler (1936, 45), Galligar (1934, 46, 1936, 166, 1938, 167, 1939, 47), Marotto (1935, 55, 1936, 56), Loo and Loo (1935, 216, 1936, 217), and others, and recent studies of

Robbins and his coworkers on excised roots (Robbins and Bartley, 1937, 170, 222, 223; Robbins, Bartley, and V. B. White, 1936, 58; Robbins and Schmidt, 1938, 60, 1939, 61, 224, 225; Robbins and V. B. White, 1936, 62) stem largely from these studies of 1930-1934. It is this work since 1930 which forms the basis for the present volume. The field is still too new to be frozen into definite patterns. This account merely attempts to bring it as nearly up to date as possible and to make the present techniques available to students of the field.

#### SUMMARY

The history of plant tissue culture has been a long and tenuous one. It may be conveniently divided into four periods: 1834-1900—The concept of cellular totipotency and its demonstration by cultivation of single cells was implicit in the fundamentals of the "cell theory" but was neither clearly expressed as a distinct concept nor subjected to experimental test during this period. 1900-1922—The idea of tissue cultures was outlined for the first time in its broad aspects by Haberlandt in 1902 and was first put into practice, with animal tissues, by Harrison in 1907 and by Burrows and Carrel in 1910. Efforts aimed at the establishment of similar cultures of plant tissues were fruitless until 1922 when Kotte and Rob-

bins independently cultivated excised root tips for brief periods. 1922-1934—The method as outlined by Kotte and Robbins was still far from fully successful, and the period from 1922 to 1934 was again one of largely unsuccessful attempts in a great many different directions. 1934-1939—In 1934 White and Gautheret gave a new impetus and orientation to the subject, White by demonstrating the possibility of growing isolated roots for unlimited periods *in vitro*, Gautheret by demonstrating the possibility of obtaining *in vitro* growth of fragments of cambium. The period 1934 to 1939 was one of rapid expansion of the field, of perfecting the nutrients and culture conditions, and of gradual establishment of the technique on a firm basis. This was capped in 1939 by White's, Nobécourt's, and Gautheret's independent demonstration of the possibility of growing undifferentiated tissues for unlimited periods and by White's demonstration of experimental control of differentiation in such cultures.

---

\* William J. Robbins, 1890- . . . Director, The New York Botanical Garden, Bronx Park, New York City. Simultaneously and independently from Kotte, cultivated excised root tips for the first time for limited periods in artificial media. Student of the vitamin requirements of plants. The author regrets that Dr. Robbins has requested that his portrait be omitted from this series.





*W. Kotte*

FIG. 10. Walter Kotte, — . Reg. Bot., Hauptstelle für Pflanzenschutz, Augustenberg, Post Grotzingen, Baden, Germany. Simultaneously and independently from Robbins\* cultivated excised root tips for the first time for limited periods in artificial media.



*R. J. Gautheret*

FIG. 11. Roger J. Gautheret, 1910- . Chargé de cours, Faculté des Sciences, Paris, France. First to cultivate, independently from White, undifferentiated plant tissues *in vitro* for unlimited periods. Student of the nutrition and behavior of excised plant tissues, especially cambium.



*Philip R. White*

FIG. 12. Philip R. White, 1901- . Associate, The Rockefeller Institute for Medical Research, Princeton, N. J. First to cultivate root tips and, independently from Gautheret, undifferentiated plant tissues *in vitro* for unlimited periods. Student of the nutrition and morphogenesis of excised plant tissues.

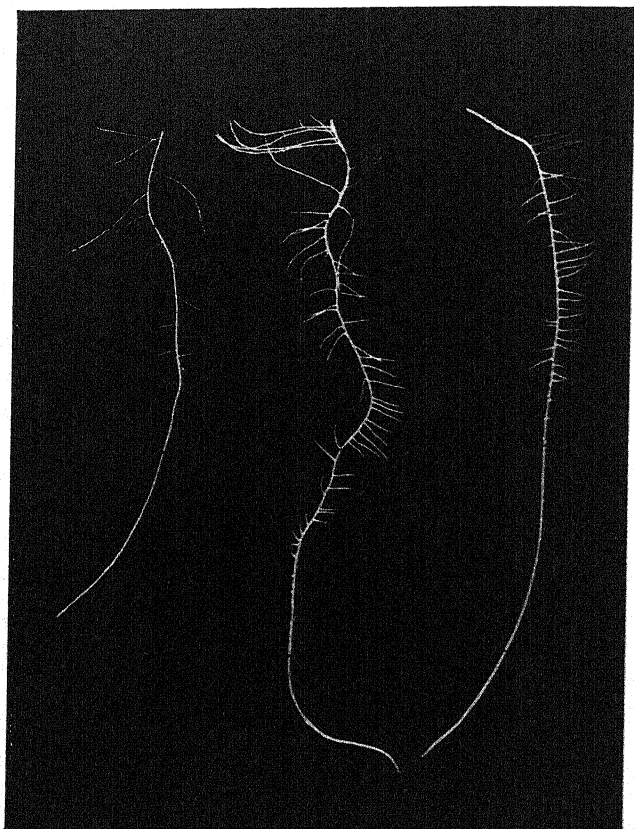
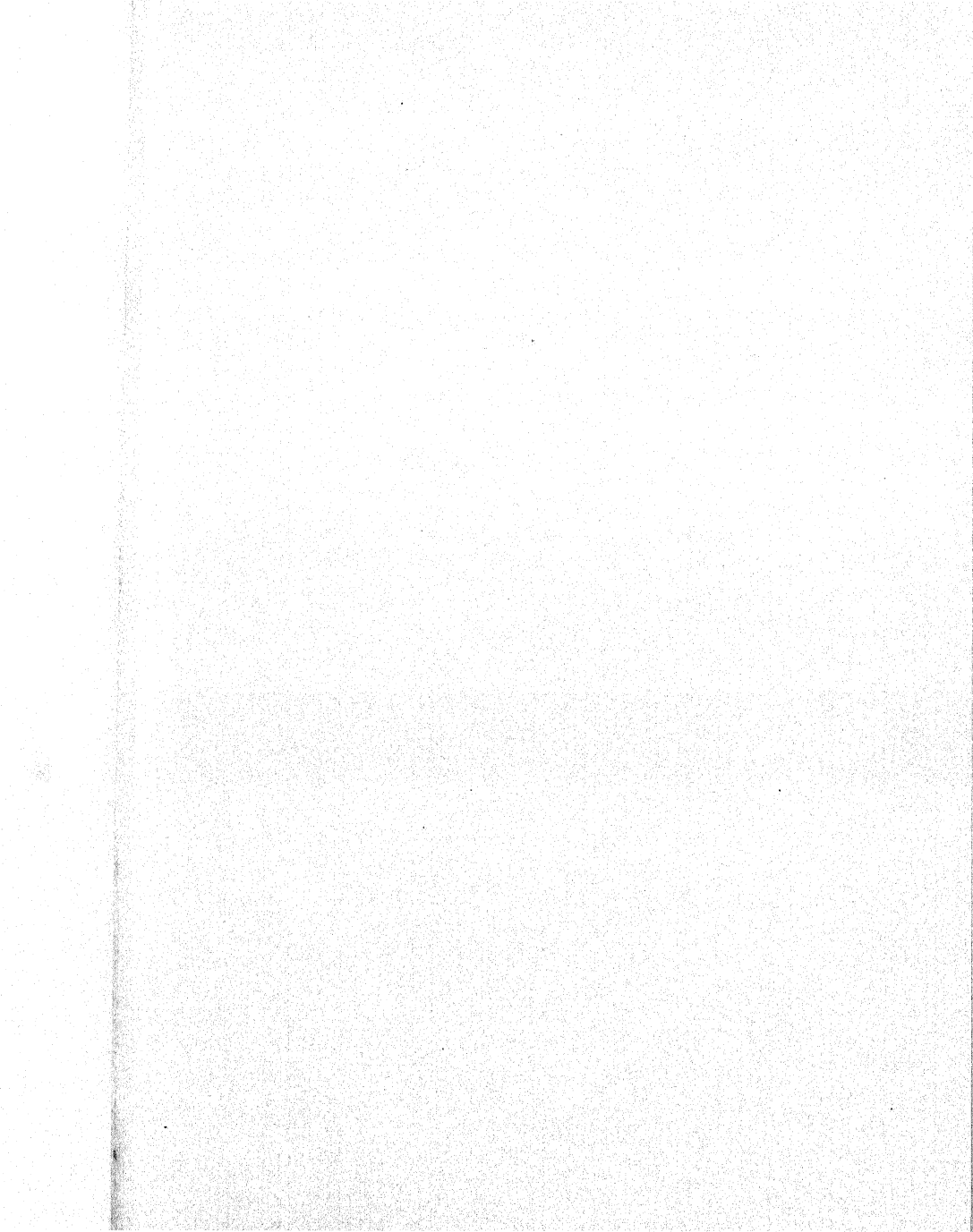


FIG. 13. Roots of tomato (left), white clover (center), and red clover (right) grown in culture for ten or more passages. (From White, P. R. 1938. *Am. J. Bot.* 25: 352, fig. 10, 66.)



“Ἄλλο δὲ ἐξ ὧν ταῦτα φλοιὸς ζῦλον μήτρα ὅσα ἔχει μήτραν. πάντα δ’ ὁμοιομερῆ. καὶ τὰ τούτω γὰρ δὲ ἐτι προτερά καὶ ἐξ ὧν ταῦτα, ὑγρον ἔς φλεψὶ σάραξ· ἀρχαὶ γὰρ αὗται. πλὴν εἰ τις λέγοι τὰς τῶν ροιχειῶν δυνάμεις, αὗται δὲ κοινὰ πάντων. ἡ μὲν οὖν οὐσία καὶ ἡ ὅλη φύσις ἐν τοῦτοις.

“Again there are the things of which such parts (root, stem, leaf) are composed, namely, bark, wood, and core (in the case of those plants which have it), and these are all ‘composed of like parts.’ Further, there are the things which are even prior to these, from which they are derived—sap, fibre, veins, flesh; for these are elementary substances—unless one should prefer to call them the active principles of the elements; and they are common to all parts of the plant. Thus, the essence and entire material of plants consists in these.”

Theophrastus. Enquiry into plants. I. II. I.  
Translation by Sir Arthur Hort. Loeb Classical  
Library. G. P. Putnam's Sons. 1916, 453.

### CHAPTER III

## THE LIVING MATERIALS

In the chapter on the history of plant tissue culture, data were presented on a long series of attempts to grow excised plant tissues. Most of these attempts failed; a few were successful. If plant tissues are classified according to their observed usefulness as culture material, it becomes immediately obvious that all of the tissues which have given promise of being grown satisfactorily, with the single exception of Schmucker's uncorroborated report (1929, 110) on leaf-mesophyll cells, have been meristematic tissues. With this single exception, all "mature" tissues have failed. This is not to say that they are all incapable of growth. But available evidence seems to indicate that, when a meristematic function is resumed by cells at any point in the plant body, as in the case of healing internal wounds, these cells are for the most part not truly mature (Schilling, 1915, 321, 1923, 322; Jaeger, 1928, 298). ✓The medullary ray parenchyma, phloem parenchyma, pith cells in general, pericycle and endodermis, and cortical parenchyma are known to retain their meriste-

matic capacity throughout most of the life of the plant (Úlehla, 1928, 115; MacDougal, 1926, 307; MacDougal and Shreve, 1924, 445; Sinnott and Bloch, 1941, 324). Epidermal tissue does so ordinarily for somewhat shorter periods (Naylor, 1931, 308; Naylor and Johnson, 1937, 309; Naylor and Sperry, 1938, 310), while such cells as trichomes, guard cells, xylem fibers, etc., retain this capacity for only very brief periods (Haberlandt, 1913, 294, 1914, 295, 1919, 245, 296, 1920, 297, 1921, 354), because of mechanical modifications if for no other reason. It is probable that means may ultimately be found for obtaining cultures from most living, nucleated cells. But the initial work in any discipline is quite properly concentrated on the easier materials available and the less promising ones may well await the establishment of more adequate techniques. Recent work in this field has, therefore, been concentrated on the meristems.

Plant meristems can, for the most part, be classified in three main groups, leaving a rather large residue of those more difficult to classify.

The fertilized egg is, of course, the meristematic cell *par excellence*, since there can be no question about its fundamental totipotency. It is, however, an extremely delicate "organism," (Fig. 20) normally hedged around by all sorts of protec-



tions against mechanical and chemical shocks, provided with very special and obscure nutrition, and requiring considerable manipulation for its excision. Hannig (1904, 81), Stingl (1907, 85), Dietrich (1924, 79), Essenbeck u. Suessenguth (1925, 80), White (1932, 89), Tukey (1933, 86, 1934, 87, 1938, 328), Werckmeister (1934, 88), LaRue (1936, 82), LaRue and Avery (1938, 83), Razdorskii (1938, 84), and others have grown excised embryos of more or less advanced stages of development, but egg cells have apparently not yet been cultured. It is probable that the difficulties involved *can* be overcome. Indeed, Tukey's results with older embryos of stone-fruits indicate considerable progress. However, since the cultivation of such embryos, as practiced, results in entire plants which differ in no wise from plants obtained from viable seed by the more usual methods, such cultures are likely to prove of value only in special cases. Noteworthy among these are the fairly numerous cases where viable embryos are initiated but where, for one reason or another, endosperm is not developed so that the embryos die of starvation. Such was the case with Tukey's hybrid peaches (1933, 86) and with the *Musa seminifera* studied by White (1928, 332). Similar "physiologically sterile" plants have been reported in the literature on numerous occasions.

The embryo itself, even up to a fairly late stage of development, is largely or entirely made up of undifferentiated cells. Indeed, in the orchids, *Peperomias*, and many other plants there is little or no morphological differentiation evident in the

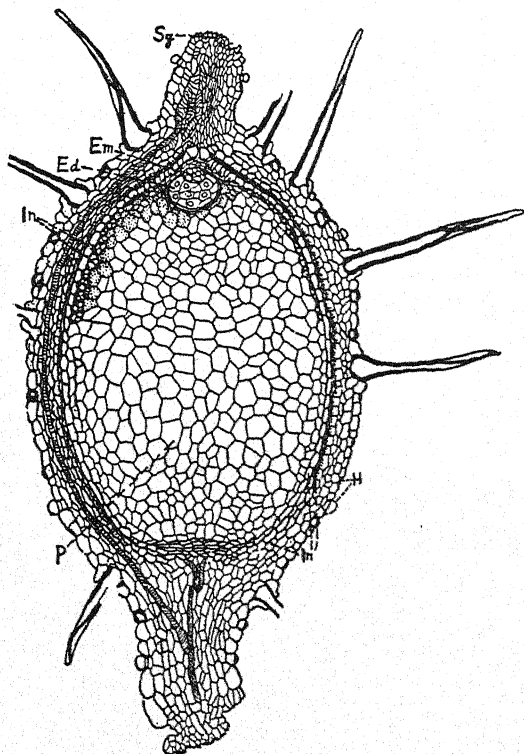


FIG. 14. Longitudinal section of seed of *Peperomia hispidula* showing the mature but completely undifferentiated, few-celled embryo. (From Johnson, D. S. 1914. *Am. J. Bot.* 1: 396, fig. 100, 444.)

embryo at the time the seeds are "ripe" (Johnson, 1912, 444). (Figs. 14, 15.) It is, therefore, possible to cut an embryo into bits and grow any one of these fragments. But, as Smith (1907, 325), Molliard (1921, 106), LaRue (1936, 82, 104), Dauphiné (1929, 94), and others have shown, even in the embryo there are some regions having a greater proliferative capacity than others, an observation which agrees with that established in animal embryology. Cotyledons will usually regenerate easily (Molliard, 1921, 106; Behre, 1929, 275). Roots can be counted on to grow as roots, but means of inducing them to develop leaves have, with rare exceptions (especially among the *Compositae*) (Fig. 16), not yet been found. Hypocotyl is in general still more refractory,

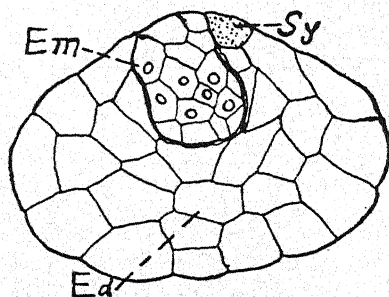


FIG. 15. Detail of endosperm and embryo of *Peperomia hispidula*. This is an ideal type of material for the study of embryo differentiation after germination. (From Johnson, D. S. 1914. *Am. J. Bot.* 1: 396, fig. 110, 444.)

while the epicotyl and plumule tend to form roots and develop into normal plants without serious difficulty. Thus, even in the embryo there is the beginning of an apparent loss of totipotency, a segregation of function which is marked in the root, somewhat less in hypocotyl and cotyledon, and lacking in epicotyl and plumule.

As the embryo grows into a plant, there is a progressive maturation of some tissues so that, except for "juvenile" cells like the medullary ray parenchyma scattered through the plant body, there are segregated certain meristematic regions which carry on the function of proliferative growth (Priestley, 1928, 314; Priestley and Swingle, 1929, 316; Jaeger, 1928, 298). These regions are: the terminal growing points of roots and stems, the lateral meristems designated as cambiums and phellogens, and intercalary meristems in the procambial region, at the base of the internodes in grasses and lianes and at the base of some leaves or, as in *Camptosorus*, near the tips of leaves.

The intercalary meristems require considerable manipulation for their excision and therefore suffer rather severe injury. Scheitterer (1931, 109) had slight success with the intercalary meristem of grasses, and none of those of lianes have been cultivated although they should be fairly easy to

work with. The only intercalary meristem which has been successfully grown is that from the procambial region of tobacco (White, 1939, 78). If the procambial tissues of fairly succulent plants such as tobacco or squash are carefully excised under aseptic conditions (see later) and placed on a nutrient substratum, proliferation will occur, the newly formed callus tissue can be removed from adherent non-proliferating medullary elements, and a rapidly growing "pure-line" callus culture will result which can be propagated in series indefinitely. This is one of the most important types of culture obtained to date and will be discussed in more detail later (Fig. 18).

If, moreover, the cambium is taken from perennial plants having secondary thickening, and for this purpose trees of fairly good size offer fewer mechanical difficulties than do smaller plants, and is placed on a nutrient, a similar proliferation occurs, the product of which can be treated in the same manner (Gautheret, 1934, 67, 1935, 15, 1937, 68, 1938, 69, 70, 1939, 71, 72, 1940, 73). When established in culture, it behaves much as do cultures derived from procambium. Gautheret has been especially successful with this type of culture and has made a number of very interesting experiments therewith (Figs. 38, 64). The cultures of callus from carrot root, carried out by

Gautheret and Nobécourt (Nobécourt, 1937, 74, 1938, 75, 76, 1939, 77), may be considered as "cambium" cultures although grown from root cambium rather than from stem cambium.

Terminal meristems are of two types—stem tips and root tips. The plumule taken from the embryo is a stem tip and cultures of this region, taken from no matter what age of plant, behave in much the same way. They differentiate into normal organs; if they become successfully established, they develop roots and subsequently behave as entire plants. As grown to date, they thus offer little or no advantage for physiological studies over seedlings derived in the usual way. Hence, although excised stem tips have been grown with some success by Robbins (1922, 57), White (1933, 116), Avery and LaRue (1938, 237), Behre (1929, 275), and others, such cultures have not proved of great value to the tissue culture field and have not been pushed very far.

Root tips, on the other hand, represent one of the most important types of material for tissue or organ cultures. If the tips of very young roots of any sort, from ungerminated embryos, seedlings, old root systems, or adventitious roots produced on cuttings, are obtained in an aseptic condition and are excised and placed in nutrient solution or on a nutrient substratum, they will, if con-

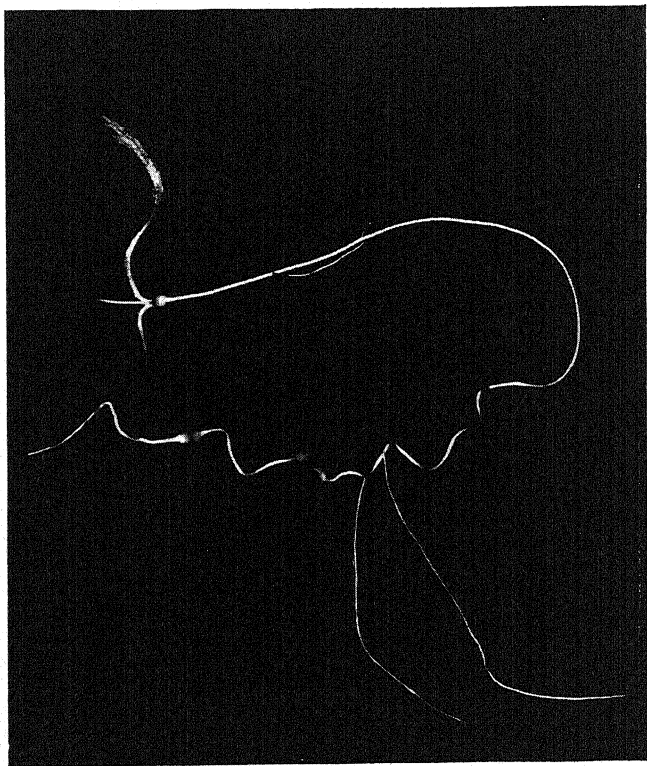


FIG. 16. Root of dandelion grown in culture. Callus normally forms on roots of many composites on *both* distal and proximal ends of cut or injured segments (see paired nodules at the left). Leaves frequently develop from these calluses (upper left). This is in sharp contrast to the behavior of callus on plants which proliferate only at the distal ends of segments.

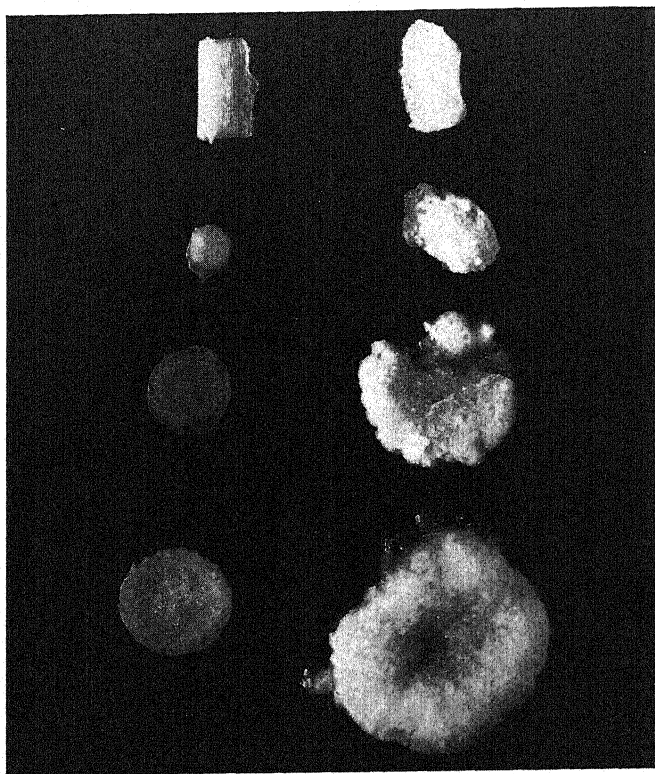


FIG. 17. Tissues from sunflower. Left-hand column, fragments immediately after excision. Right-hand column, the same after two weeks on nutrient agar. Top: wedge-shaped segment taken from an old stem, containing (left) cortex, (center) vascular tissue including cambium, and (right) pith. Second row: transverse segment from procambial region where all parts are approximately equally meristematic. Third row: transverse segment from somewhat older stem. Proliferation is largely from the cambial ring. Bottom: transverse segment from an old stem. (From White, P. R., and Braun, A. C. 1942. *Cancer Research* 2: fig. 3, 337.)



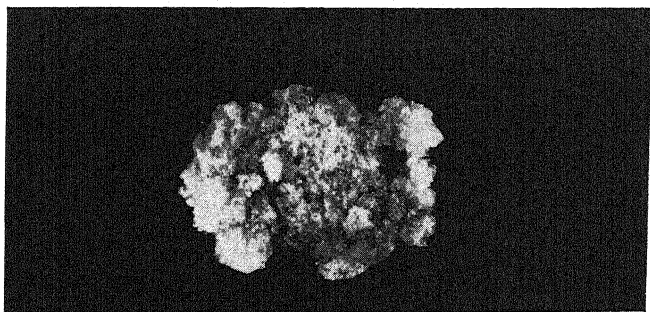


FIG. 18. Culture of undifferentiated callus from the hybrid, *Nicotiana langsdorffii*  $\times$  *N. glauca* maintained for many passages *in vitro* on nutrient agar. (From White, P. R. 1939. Am. J. Bot. 26: 60, fig. 3, 78.)

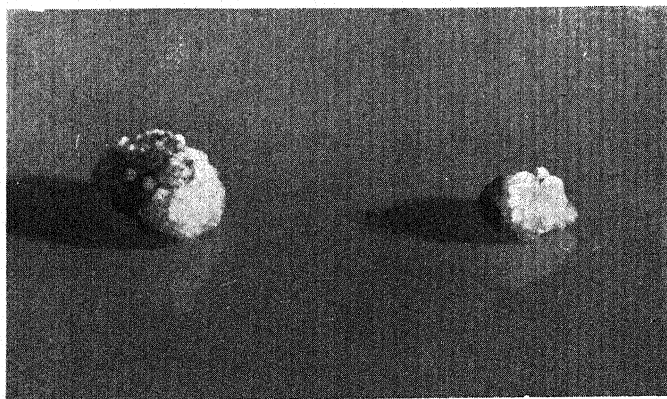


FIG. 19. Cultures of bacteria-free crown-gall tissue from sunflower, grown *in vitro* on nutrient agar.



FIG. 20. Young embryo of *Portulaca oleracea* with remnants of the embryo sac still adhering. If embryos of this and still younger stages can be grown, much may be learned of the factors involved in early embryo development. (From White, P. R. 1932. Arch. exp. Zellf. 11: 610, fig. 8, 89.)

ditions are right, grow normally. They maintain for the most part their normal morphology, branching and extending in a regular way. The details of this morphology are characteristic for different species (Figs. 13, 21-24). There is, for example, a very marked and wide difference in degree of apical dominance (White, 1938, 66). In the mustard, *Brassica nigra*, apical dominance is extremely weak; as fast as branches are laid down, they grow with a vigor equal to that of the parent root so that an open network of rootlets is formed without definite outlines. Roots of clover, *Trifolium repens* (Fig. 13), on the other hand have a very marked apical dominance so that, even though many branches may be laid down, their increment is greatly retarded as compared with that of the original root and the growth habit is that of a well defined and very attenuate cone. The habits are thus roughly comparable to those of the white oak (*Quercus alba*), on the one hand, and the white fir (*Abies lasiocarpa*), on the other.

Such roots can be excised with a minimum of injury since the cross sectional area is small in proportion to the volume of even a comparatively short piece. They are meristematic for a considerable length and consequently can be counted on to grow with fair rapidity. They are naturally

immersed in a nutrient substratum (the soil solution), the essential feature of which is a mobile liquid solution so that placing them in a liquid nutrient does not involve any marked change in their environment, provided the nutrient is sufficiently aerated in some way (Cannon, 1932, 240; Zimmerman, 1930, 270; Steward, Berry, and Broyer, 1936, 262; Hoagland and Broyer, 1936, 246). This substratum is, in nature, a fairly complex solution of salts, humic acids, and other simple organic compounds. The major problem in duplicating the environment of a root is in providing the equivalent of the organic materials ordinarily supplied by the parent plant, and a glance at the anatomy of a rapidly growing root shows that these materials, coming from the phloem, must travel for considerable distances by diffusion through other cells before they can reach the dividing cells themselves. It might, therefore, be anticipated that these organic materials would prove to be relatively simple substances, as indeed they have (see later). The problem of growing excised roots should, therefore, both from a mechanical and a physiological point of view, be relatively simple. Kotte's (1922, 51, 52) and Robbins' (1922, 57) early work supported this supposition. Excised root tips have, in fact, served as the experimental material *par excellence* for the pre-

liminary work in developing a tissue and organ culture technique, and practically all of the fundamental steps in that development have been made first with root tips and only later applied to other tissues. Such roots are, in fact, very sensitive to differences in cultural conditions such as temperature, pH (White, 1932, 63), osmotic value (Bonner and Addicott, 1937, 42), concentration and proportion of nutrient salts (White, 1933, 141, 1937, 143; Bonner and Addicott, 1937, 42), carbohydrate supply (White, 1932, 63, 1940, 172, 173), etc.; this sensitivity manifests itself either in change of growth habit (qualitative) or change in growth rate (quantitative). Growth rate can be measured quite accurately by any of a number of methods (see later), so that it is possible to follow the effects of relatively small differences in environmental conditions and to establish optimal ranges for these conditions.

There remains a variety of meristematic regions which are more difficult to classify. The entire young flower, and particularly the ovary, is at first meristematic. This function is retained in some tissues for a long time. Wehnelt (1927, 230) and subsequently Bonner and English (1938, 342) have taken advantage of this fact in using the inner surface of bean pods as test-pieces for a study of the growth stimulating properties of

certain plant extracts (Fig. 35). White (1932, 89) and Moebius (1922, 105) have attempted to grow immature ovules and Tukey (1937, 114) and Börger (1926, 92) attempted to grow excised placental tissue without marked success. There are, in addition to these meristematic regions, cells scattered throughout the plant body, such as the medullary ray cells, the "xylem parenchyma" cells, the phloem companion cells, which retain a characteristic meristematic appearance long after the neighboring cells have "matured," and are capable of resuming growth when freed from the inhibitory effects of the neighboring tissues. Cells of the pith, of the cortex, of the epidermis, and other tissues may also, under special and at present little understood conditions, resume a meristematic function (Reiche, 1924, 369; Okado, 1920, 312; Wilhelm, 1930, 338; Winkler, 1902, 339; Sinnott and Bloch, 1941, 324; Stingl, 1909, 326), but until a great deal more is known about them than at present they cannot be looked upon as satisfactory material for plant tissue cultures.

## SUMMARY

Examination of the history of plant tissue cultures shows that only those tissues have so far been successfully cultivated which possess a fundamentally meristematic character and do not have to undergo any major degree of de-differentiation. Plant meristems are, for the most part, of three main types. Apical meristems, particularly root tips, have been cultivated extensively and most of the details of technique have been developed through their study. Intercalary meristems such as cambium have also been successfully grown, as undifferentiated masses or with their differentiation experimentally controlled. Egg-cells and embryos, insofar as they have been grown in culture, have given rise to complete plants. Such cultures can be of importance in the study of the origin of form and function only insofar as the degree and direction of their differentiation can be controlled. Other tissues, such as young ovaries, placental tissues, etc., have been studied to a lesser degree and have in some cases proved useful for special purposes.







FIG. 21. White-clover root grown *in vitro*, showing the massive root-cap commonly formed on the roots of legumes. (From White, P. R. 1938. *Am. J. Bot.* 25: 352, fig. 11a, 66.)

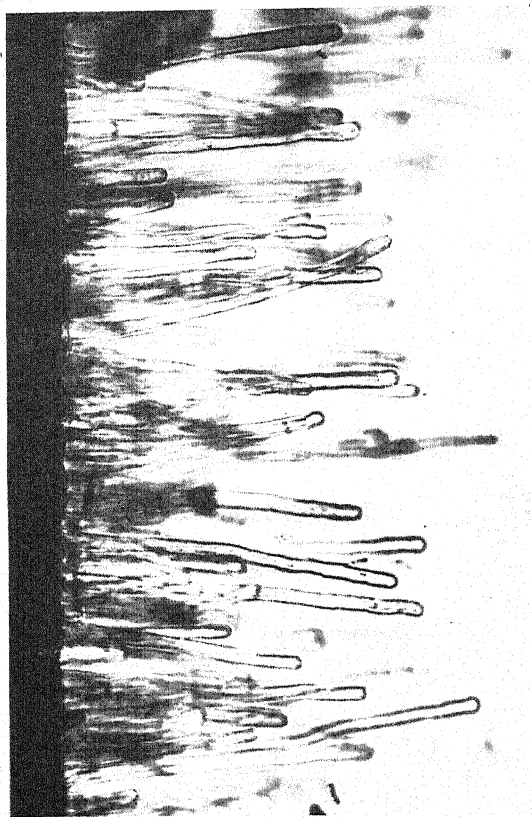


FIG. 22. Root hairs from an excised tomato root grown *in vitro*.  
(From Seifriz, W., *The Physiology of Plants*. 1938. 52, fig. 19.)



FIG. 23. Root hairs on roots of buckwheat grown *in vitro*.  
(From White, P. R. 1938. Am. J. Bot. 25: 349, fig. 4, 66.)

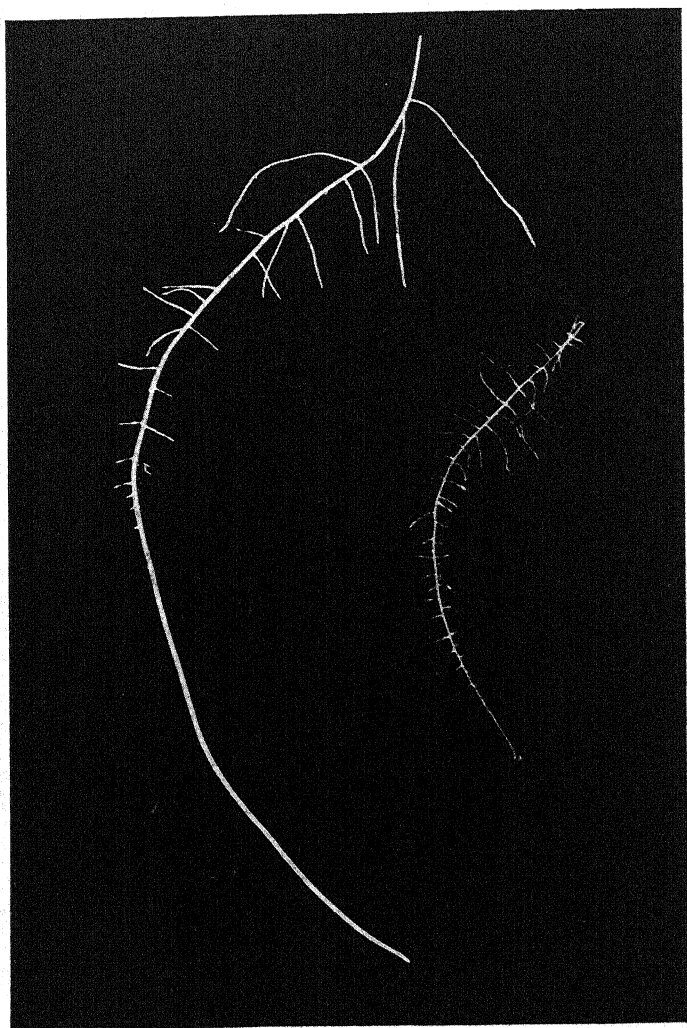
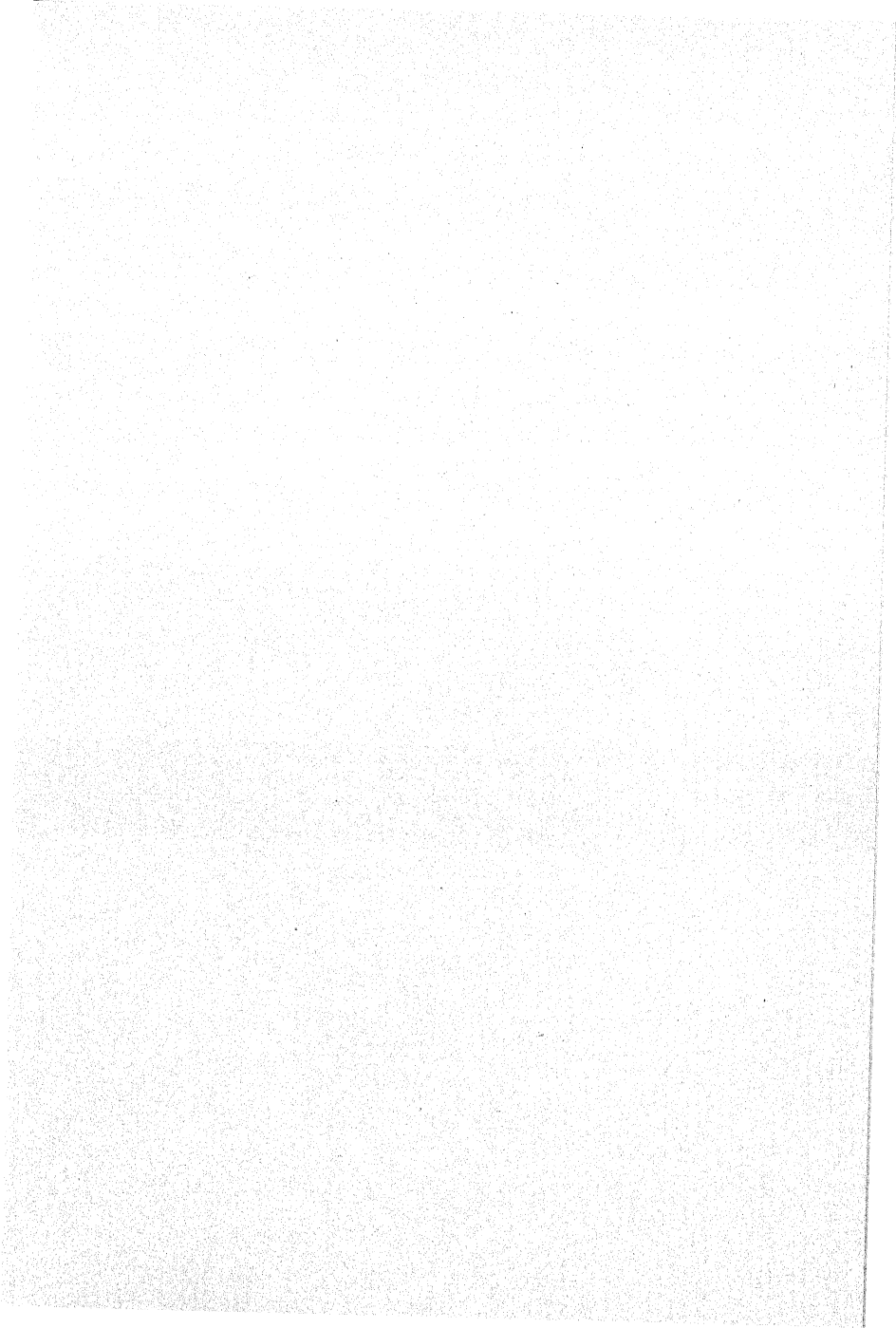


FIG. 24. Root of tomato (left) and buckwheat (right). (From White, P. R. 1938. *Am. J. Bot.* 25: 349, fig. 2, 66.)



"(My) room was generally hung round with Guts, stomachs, bladders, preparations of parts and drawings. I had sand furnaces, Calots, Glasses and all sorts of Chymical Implements. . . . Here I and my Associates often dined upon the same table as our dogs lay upon. I often prepared the *pulvis fulminans* and sometimes surprized the whole College with a sudden explosion. I cur'd a lad once of an ague with it, by fright. In my own Elaboratory I made large quantitys of *sal volatile oleosum*, *Tinctura Metallorum*, *Elixir Proprietatis* and such matters as would serve to put into our Drink."

Diary of Mr. Wm. Stukeley, 1707, describing his rooms at Cambridge where he and his fellow student, Mr. Stephen Hales, planned and carried out some of the first real experiments in plant and animal physiology. 443.

## CHAPTER IV

### THE LABORATORY

The description of a laboratory given above is presented as an example, not an ideal! The general requirements for a plant tissue culture laboratory are the same as those for any detailed micro-culture work: 1, facilities for the preparation, sterilization, and storage of nutrients and for the cleansing of used equipment; 2, a place for the aseptic manipulation of tissue masses; 3, facilities for the maintenance of cultures under carefully controlled conditions; 4, facilities for examination and study of cultures in whatever ways may be desired, and 5, a place for the assemblage and filing of records. It will seldom be possible to carry on all these procedures in a single room with any degree of effectiveness, but the degree of complexity introduced into the organization of the laboratory will depend on the particular needs and the facilities available for any given work. The ideal organization would allow a separate room for each of the above procedures—a media room, a transfer room, one or more culture rooms, a laboratory, and an office. (Compare Parker, 1938, 26.) (Fig. 25.)

*The media room.* The media room will ordinarily be used for preparing and sterilizing of nutrients and equipment and probably also for the storage of extra supplies. If possible, it should be reserved for the preparation of nutrients and equipment for tissue cultures only, since sharing it with bacteriologists, mycologists, etc., involves definite risks of contaminations, both biological and chemical. There will be required: a good stove, an autoclave, a dry-sterilization oven, a refrigerator, a sink, a water still, tables and cup-

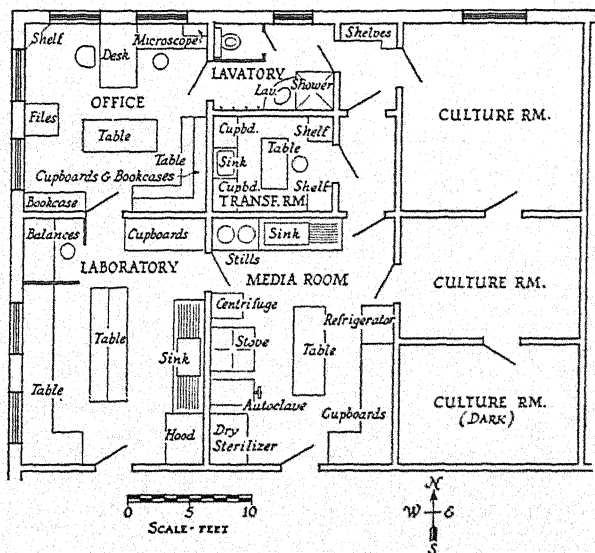


FIG. 25. Plan for a suite of rooms designed particularly for use in the study of plant tissue cultures.



boards, and possibly an Arnold sterilizer. Gas, vacuum for use in filtering, compressed air for use in drying pipettes, etc., and extra water connections and electric outlets should be provided. The stove, autoclave, and oven require no special comment. The sink should be of acid-proof vitreous material with vitreous piping, or should be kept thoroughly paraffined since a great deal of washing in chromic acid cleaning solution will have to be done therein. It should be fairly large, with the faucets placed high enough to escape possible splashing from the sink. It has been found convenient to place a broad shelf above the sink wide enough to take two 20-liter Pyrex carboys, one for single-distilled water, the other for double-distilled water, and to drain graduates from a rack below the shelf. There should also be a draining rack for flasks and miscellaneous glassware. If distilled water is available as a laboratory service, it can be piped above the sink and replace the carboy of single-distilled water. Such a supply should not, however, be relied upon for water for making up solutions or for the final rinsing of glassware. For these purposes, water should always be re-distilled in a special still installed in the media room. Where a laboratory supply of distilled water is not available, it will be necessary to have two stills, either separate or built in tan-

dem. The best procedure appears to be to start with "tap water" from a spring or well (city water frequently contains chlorine which may pass over in the still and reappear in the product unless the condenser is properly vented). This should be treated with a softener and filter to remove the greater amount of dissolved salts, oil from pumps, particulate matter, and other products which might interfere with the efficiency of the first distillation. It should then be distilled with an ordinary well-vented still and should finally be passed into a second still, re-distilled, and the final product collected in Pyrex containers. A block tin still of the "Precision" type, if properly handled, is quite satisfactory for the final distillation for all ordinary purposes. A Pyrex still can also be used. Distillation in quartz, silica, silver, or other special types of stills will seldom be necessary. Special precautions to insure removal of traces of particular elements may have to be taken in special cases—thus, Pyrex can, of course, not be used for storage of water to be used in any critical experiments on the behavior of tissues towards boron, rubber tubing or stoppers should not be used in experiments with zinc or sulfur, and so on (Arnon, 1938, 133; Arnon and Stout, 1939, 134, 135; Stout and Arnon, 1939, 140; Hoagland and Arnon, 1941,

137). With these points in mind, a satisfactory supply of water can be prepared.

Salts must be accurately weighed. With the exception of the sugar (see later) which can be weighed on a coarse torsion balance in the media room, all weighings should be carried out in the laboratory room on high grade quantitative balances.

The actual preparation of media will be discussed in a separate chapter and the glassware required will be listed there.

Glassware must be kept scrupulously clean (Richards, 1936, 452). Carrel (see Parker, 1938, 26) boils his flasks in soap solution, rinses thoroughly with water and then with 95 per cent alcohol, and allows them to dry, after which they are dry-sterilized. Vogelaar and Erlichmann (1939, 457) recommend washing in a sodium pyro-phosphate solution. In this laboratory, it has been customary to wash all glassware after use in a sulfuric acid-potassium dichromate solution, made up without added water. The cleaning solution is kept in 3-gallon glazed crocks, such a crock being placed in one corner of the vitreous or well-paraffined sink. The flasks to be washed are first emptied and, if they contain any solid matter, this is rinsed out (Step 1 in the cleaning routine). They are then placed in the acid and allowed to

stand for a few minutes (Step 2). For ordinary routine washing of flasks used only for liquid nutrients, the time required to transfer 50 flasks from the draining table to the rinsing container (Step 4 in the washing routine) is usually long enough for flasks to stand in the acid. Flasks which have contained solid residues likely to stick to the walls should be left in acid over night. After standing the requisite time, the flasks are removed from the acid, using linemen's rubber gloves, are drained thoroughly into the crock, and are then placed on 18"  $\times$  24" enamel trays for further draining (Step 3). While they are draining, a second batch of flasks can be immersed in the crock of acid. After thorough draining on the trays, the flasks are placed under running warm water for a few minutes (Step 4). It is important that all traces of bichromate be removed (Richards, 1936, 452). They are then rinsed thoroughly at least five times in running tap water, twice in single-distilled water, and finally once in double-distilled water, after which they are inverted in paper-lined metal trays and set aside to dry. Excess cleaning solution from the draining trays can be poured back into the crock at intervals. The acid should be replaced by fresh whenever it turns green and ceases to remove pencil markings on flasks without rub-

bing. Do not pour exhausted solution down the sink! It can be emptied in some waste place where it will do no serious damage.

Nutrients will generally be made up in 4-liter, 10-liter, or 20-liter serum bottles (see later). A supply of graduates of various sizes, 125, 250, 500, and 1000 ml. Erlenmeyer flasks, 500, 1000, and 3000 ml. balloon flasks, test tubes, pipettes, etc., will be required for the preparation of different nutrients and should be kept in the media room. Both absorbent and non-absorbent cotton, a good grade of cheesecloth, heavy paper for wrapping glassware for dry-sterilization, cord, stones for sharpening instruments, etc., should also be provided.

Cotton plugs for flasks should be of non-absorbent cotton and should be wrapped in cheesecloth. This reduces the danger of plugs sticking to the mouths of the flasks, prevents loose fibers from falling into the flasks, and helps to preserve the form of the plugs. Plugs prepared in this way can be used repeatedly. It has been found best to cover each plugged flask with an inverted 50 ml. beaker to keep out dust and water of condensation, else molds are likely to grow in the plugs and ultimately penetrate to the nutrient (Figs. 29-31). (See Tukey, 1934, 87). Metal trays  $13'' \times 21'' \times 3\frac{1}{2}''$  (Fig. 31) are of the proper dimen-

sions to hold forty 125 ml. Erlenmeyer flasks, and three such trays of flasks can be placed simultaneously in a 20-inch autoclave. Shelves should be provided of proper depth to hold these trays where nutrient can be stored after sterilization.

*The transfer room.* This is perhaps the most important room in the laboratory. A good transfer room is absolutely essential for satisfactory tissue culture work. For very simple manipulations, a low bacteriologist's hood may suffice, but for any extensive work a special room is essential, and, since the conditions required differ somewhat from those in a pathological laboratory, it should, if possible, be reserved for this work alone. Robbins, and Lewis use plywood chambers about 4'6"  $\times$  5'6"  $\times$  7'6", provided with air filters, electricity, and gas. The ideal transfer room should be an inside room, without windows. Windows always leak, no matter how well built, so that a marked increase in contaminations in a room provided with them always occurs in windy weather. Light from windows is also very irregular. The temperature drop across a window, moreover, sets up convection currents within the room. These annoyances are eliminated by using an inside room. It should have no special heating unit, since such a unit is also a source of convection currents. A well designed air-conditioning outfit

with proper filters and correctly placed outlets will provide adequate aeration and temperature control. A room about  $8 \times 10$  ft. with 8 ft. ceiling is an excellent size. The lighting should be diffuse, preferably through a broad skylight supplemented by properly placed indirect lamps. Cupboards with tight, sliding doors may be built into the walls, but there should be no fixed furniture in the room and all wall surfaces, doors, etc., should be designed so as to reduce to a minimum the possibility of dust accumulating. Outlets for electricity, compressed air, vacuum, and water should be provided. There should be a sink built into a flush hood at one end of the room. A movable table and stools should be provided. The walls and ceiling should be of washable tile or enamel and, as Carrel (see Parker, 1938, 26) has pointed out, a dark gray color is best since it reduces reflections and the mental distractions which lighter-colored surfaces always impose. Provision should be made for washing the air of the room with a series of water sprays or steam jets so as to remove any spores which may get in when the room is opened.

A transfer room for plant tissue cultures should *not* contain gas outlets. Gas is extremely toxic to plant materials and unburned gas may easily be occluded in the culture flasks if the mouths are

flamed (Saeger, 1933, 261). Cotton plugs char, and bits of charred cotton falling into flasks of nutrient may vitiate the results of nutrition experiments. Cotton itself contains significant quantities of thiamin (Schopfer et Rytz, 1937, 226). With rare exceptions, the custom of flaming the mouths of tubes and plugs is a pernicious hocus-pocus. Flasks which are properly handled and plugged and are capped to keep out dust and water of condensation will remain sterile for months without flaming. Instruments can be adequately sterilized in boiling water. If needles for bacteriological studies *must* be flamed, this can be done quite satisfactorily in a small alcohol flame without the hazards involved in the use of gas. The use of gas around a plant tissue culture laboratory should be reduced to a minimum.

*The culture rooms.* The details of culture rooms, laboratory, and office will, of course, be modified to meet the needs and facilities of individual workers. Facilities for accurate control of temperature, illumination, and humidity, and experimental comparison of different levels of these factors are desirable. Since plant tissue cultures are extremely sensitive to temperature fluctuations (White, 1932, 63, 1937, 265, 266) and have an optimum temperature only slightly above room temperature (about 27°–30° C.), it is impor-



tant that even the room used for routine stock cultures be air-conditioned, with facilities for cooling in extremely hot weather. Cultures maintained in an ordinary laboratory room without such control show a marked seasonal variation in growth rate (Fig. 26) (White, 1937, 265) and may, in extreme weather, suffer serious injury. The experimental culture room should be provided with plenty of table space or, alternatively, with table-height wall benches, since most experimental cultures must be examined at frequent intervals and must be easily accessible. Stock cultures can be kept on shelves, since they do not need to be handled.

*The laboratory.* Like the culture room, the laboratory must be adapted for the particular type of problem in view. A complete laboratory should contain facilities for chemical analyses, a good hood, balances, drying ovens, equipment for preparation of sections and slides and their examination, equipment for special types of experiments such as respiration apparatus, facilities for glass-blowing, etc. Gas outlets for use in connection with plant tissue culture work should, where possible, be restricted to this room and the media room. There should, of course, be adequate cupboard space for chemicals.

*The office.* Every man has his own ideas of

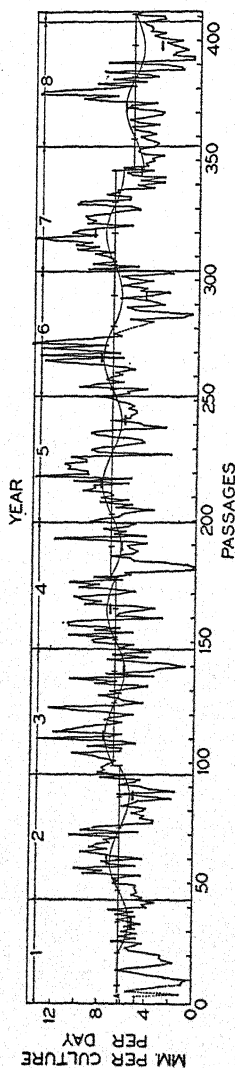


FIG. 26. Weekly average increment rates of a single clone of excised tomato roots over a period of eight years (410 passages), showing the regular winter-summer cycle superimposed on the random and as yet unexplained week-to-week variations. This cycle is partly, though probably not entirely, the result of seasonal variations in the temperature of the laboratory in which the roots were grown.

how an office should be arranged, so that that need not be treated in detail here.

What has been outlined above is approximately an ideal suite. Most setups will, of course, fall short of this ideal, but that need not detract from the quality of the work done so long as the problems attacked are restricted to those for which the available equipment is adequate. Good work has been done in many a garret. But it must be remembered that the garret is usually the birth-place of sciences, not their adult milieu. Jacques Loeb's tumblers and finger bowls would hardly have sufficed for the determination of particle shape of virus molecules.

Most of the equipment used in preparing and maintaining plant tissue cultures—glassware, implements, etc.—are the same as those available in any good microbiological laboratory, so that they need only be enumerated. There are, however, a few items not so likely to be found in the average laboratory.

*Glassware.* Graduates, pipettes, Erlenmeyer flasks, balloon flasks, beakers, Stender dishes, watch glasses, test tubes, hollow ground slides, cover slips of various sizes and shapes, burettes, etc., are, of course, stock necessities. Most cultures of both roots and callus can best be maintained in 125 ml. Erlenmeyer flasks. These can

be handled far more easily than test tubes (which require special sloped racks), they present a larger space in which to work when dissections are to be performed on the cultures, they will stand on an ordinary table without rolling, and they are easily cleaned. They do occupy considerable space. Special flasks such as Carrel flasks

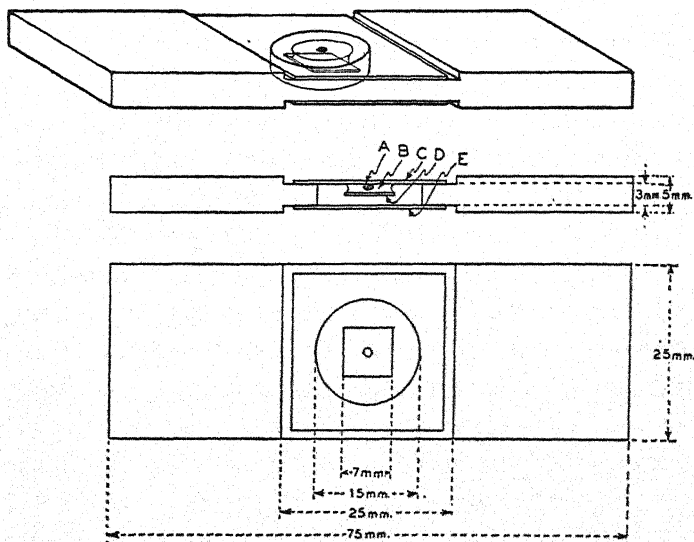


FIG. 27. Diagram of a special, pierced slide found particularly satisfactory for hanging-drop cultures of plant tissues. A, tissue fragment. B, drop of nutrient. C, square  $22 \times 22$  mm. No. 1 cover glass on which culture is made. D, small  $7 \times 7$  mm. No. 0 cover glass (square or round) held on lower surface of nutrient by capillarity providing a flat lower as well as upper surface to the drop. E, square  $22 \times 22$  mm. No. 2 cover glass closing the bottom of the chamber.

appear not to have any considerable advantages for plant tissue cultures. If test tubes are to be used—as may be desirable in some experiments—the 1"  $\times$  6" size is the most useful (Fig. 29).

Two special pieces of glassware have been found extremely useful. The first is the Maximow embryological watch glass (Maximow, 1925, 420). This has a cemented plate-glass bottom which offers an optically flat surface far superior to the pressed type in common use, especially for fine dissections under the binocular. Those with the beveled wall to the cavity are more easily cleaned than those with a straight up-and-down wall. This same property of optical flatness is often likewise important in the slides used for hanging-drop cultures. This requirement may be met in several ways. The glass Van Tiegham cell can be used. Dr. Warren Lewis places low brass rings dipped in paraffin on ordinary slides and cements the inverted cover slips to these. A still better method is to use special 3 mm. thick slides, each of which is pierced with a 10–12 mm. hole. Short pieces of thin (1 mm.) slides are cemented to both top and bottom of these, at both ends, leaving a space 25 mm. long in the center, surrounding the hole, free. A 22 mm. square No. 2 cover slip is fastened with vaseline to the bottom of the slide in this space, forming a circular chamber with a

thin flat bottom. The cover slip carrying the culture is then inverted over the chamber. This chamber is optically flat. It can be opened either by removal of the culture or, if access to the culture is desired without disturbing it, as for micro-manipulation, the chamber can be opened from below by sliding out the first cover glass. Because of the cemented-on strips at the ends of the slides, they can be stacked one on top of another or used freely on the microscope platform without danger of deranging the cultures. Pierced slides for this purpose can be obtained for about 30 cents apiece (Fig. 27).

A special burette for filling flasks has been found useful. This will be discussed in the chapter on the preparation of nutrients.

*Implements.* Scalpels, scissors, needles, forceps, platinum loops, etc., are standard equipment. For severing roots in the flasks, Robbins uses a long-handled scalpel made by spot-welding a chip of razor blade to a wire held in a transfer loop handle. A surgeon's nasal scissors of the Gruenewald or Heymann type is, for many types of dissection, still more satisfactory. It is of just the right length to reach to the bottom of a 125 ml. Erlenmeyer flask, does not require a wide space for manipulation as do iridectomy scissors, will cut cleanly even against considerable resis-

tance (a point of importance in operating on woody cultures), and is generally very efficient. For working in very large flasks, cystoscopic scissors may be desirable, but will be needed only in special cases. Scalpels have, in general, been found not very satisfactory (Fig. 28).

As has been pointed out elsewhere, it is not desirable to have gas in the transfer room. Most implements are best sterilized by boiling. This may be done in a surgeon's sterilizing pan or on an ordinary hot plate. A very satisfactory method is to place a one-liter stainless steel beaker of distilled water, heated with a Westinghouse immersion heater such as is sold to traveling salesmen for heating shaving water, on the operating table. The instruments may be kept immersed in this when not in actual use. In making transfers usually two needles or loops are employed, one being kept in the boiling water at all times. With this precaution, bacterial or fungus contaminations are almost never carried from one flask to another (Figs. 29, 30).

For flaming flasks, tubes, or needles in special cases as, for example, when it is necessary to pour nutrient from one flask to another, an alcohol lamp may be provided.

## SUMMARY

Ideal facilities for plant tissue culture work should include a media room for the preparation of nutrients and equipment, an operating and transfer room for the preparation of cultures, one or more culture rooms for the maintenance of cultures under accurately controlled and systematically manipulated environmental conditions, a laboratory for the study and analysis of nutrients and cultures and for chemical and physical tests, and an office for the study and filing of experimental records.

Little special equipment is required other than that to be found in any good microbiological laboratory.



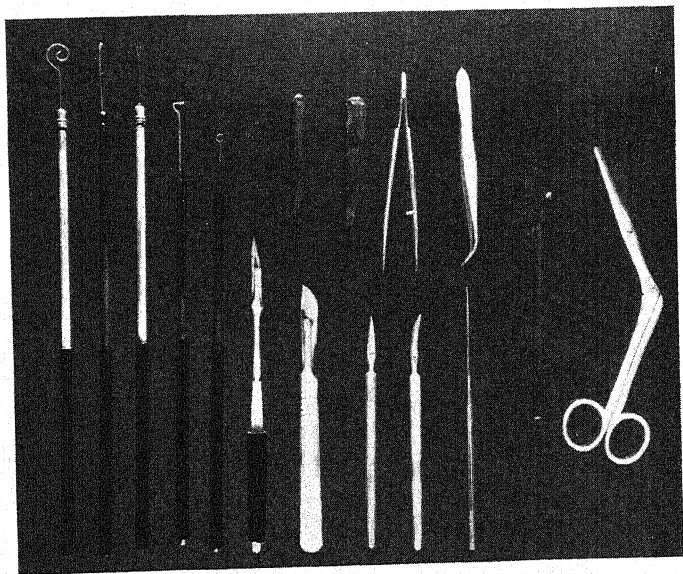


FIG. 28. Implements commonly used in plant tissue culture work. From left to right: spiral loop used for transferring large callus cultures intact; platinum spatula for transferring small cultures; loop for transferring small roots, callus cultures, and suspensions of bacteria, yeasts, etc.; hooked wire used by Robbins to transfer small pieces of roots; loop used in transferring root segments a centimeter or more in length; two types of scalpels with replaceable blades, suitable for dissecting callus cultures *in situ* and two smaller scalpels with fixed blades; a surgeon's ear-curette used for making initial isolations of procambial and other meristematic tissues from stems, galls, etc.; glass spatula used for grinding tissues and making inoculations to leaves in the study of viruses in plant tissues; a surgeon's ear-and-throat scissor of a length suitable for cutting up root cultures in a 125-ml. Erlenmeyer flask. Above, two dissecting needles suitable for fine dissections, and two types of forceps.

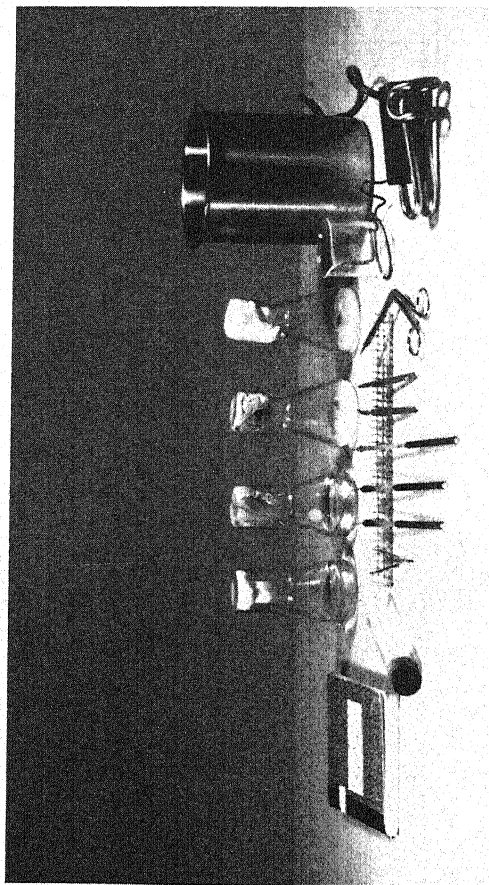


Fig. 29. Equipment commonly used in preparing and transferring all types of plant tissue cultures.

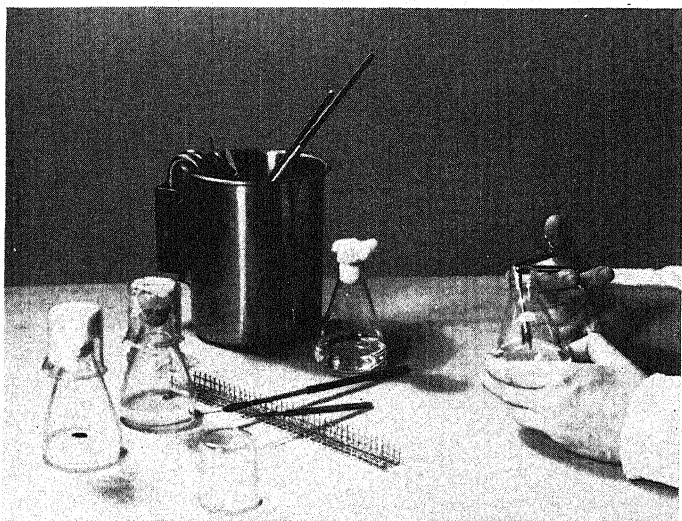


FIG. 30. Procedure employed in cutting roots within their flasks, preparatory to transferring them to fresh nutrient.

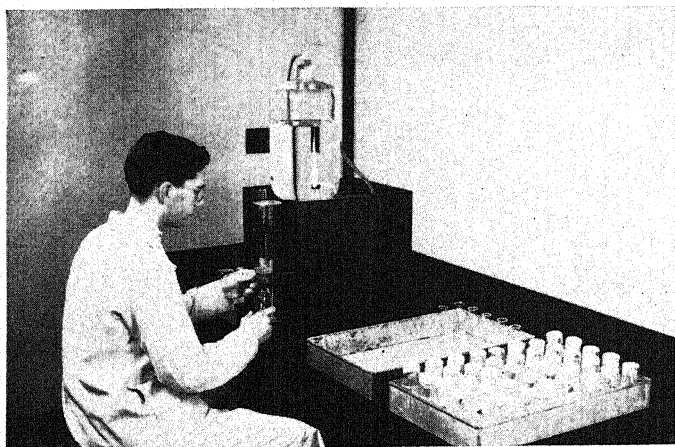


FIG. 31. Distributing nutrient to flasks. The tray to the operator's left contains empty flasks which are filled from a semi-automatic burette and transferred to the tray to the right, to be plugged, capped, and sterilized.

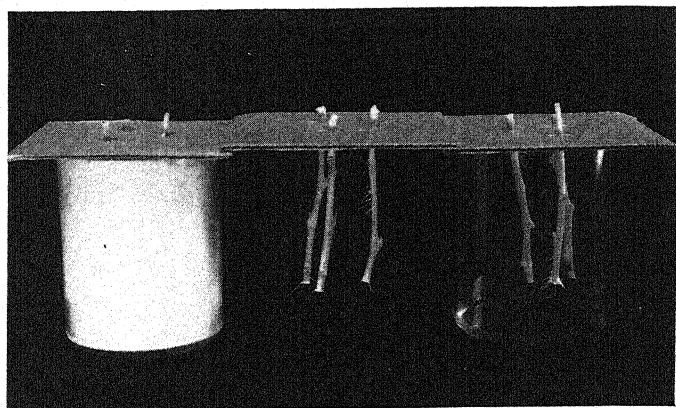


FIG. 32. Method of obtaining sterile adventitious roots from cuttings of tomato. Cuttings are suspended inside a glass cylinder lined with constantly wet blotting paper until roots develop.

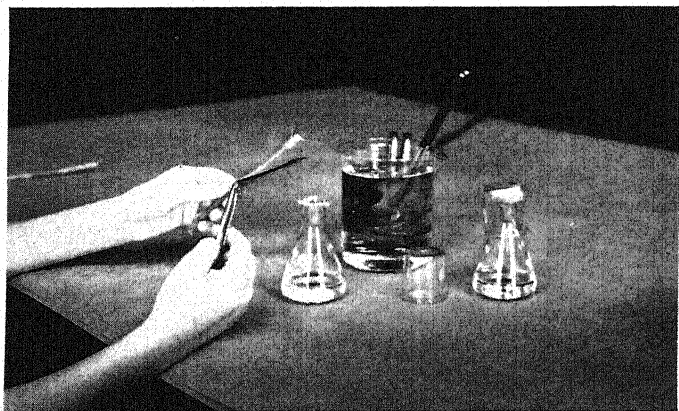
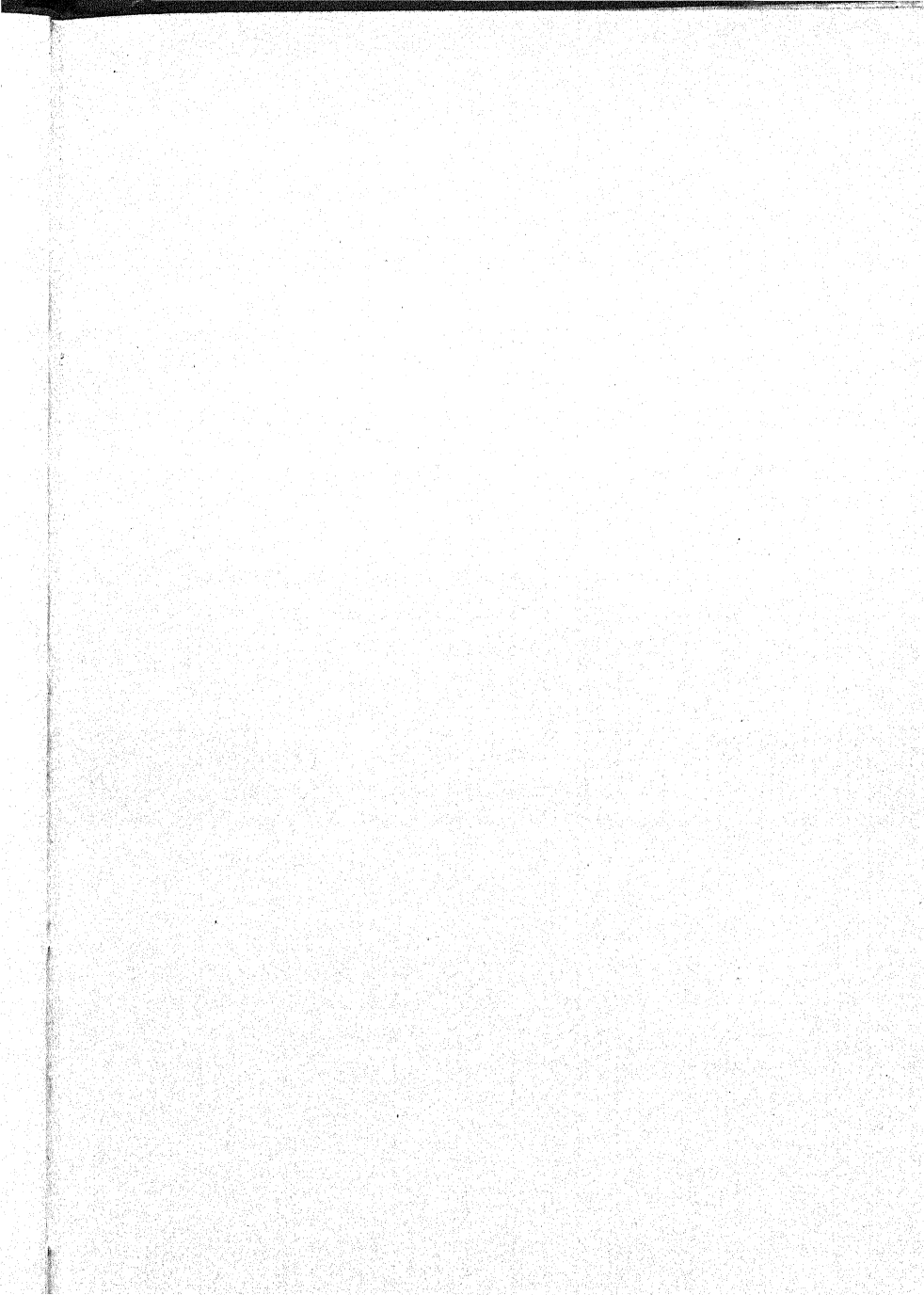


FIG. 33. Method of excising adventitious roots from cuttings, for inoculation into sterile nutrient.



## CHAPTER V

### NUTRIENTS

Unlike animal tissue cultures, plant tissue cultures have from the beginning been carried out in nutrients which are wholly or in major part synthetic. This is, of course, of great practical as well as theoretical importance. Nevertheless, it has come about as a matter of necessity rather than by deliberate intent. Animal tissue culture nutrients are for the most part made up of complex organic materials—embryo extract (Carrel, 1913, 190), blood plasma or serum (Harrison, 1907, 131; Erlichman, 1935, 147), peptic digests of fibrin (Baker, 1933, 183; Baker and Carrel, 1926, 184, 185, 1928, 187–189; Carrel and Baker, 1926, 191; Ebeling, 1921, 192, 1924, 193; Fischer and Demuth, 1928, 194), tissue broth and the like with, it is true, salt mixtures such as Ringer's (1886, 160), Tyrode's (1910, 161), Locke's (1895, 157–159), or other solutions (Drew, 1922, 145, 1924, 146; Lewis, M. R., 1916, 148; Lewis, M. R., and Lewis, W. H., 1911, 149–151, 1912, 152, 153; Lewis, W. H., 1921, 154, 1923, 155, 1929, 156; Vogelaar and Erlichman, 1933, 162, 1934, 163, 164,

1936, 235, 1939, 165), added, but in which these synthetic adjuncts play only a secondary and ill-defined role. Little is really known about the exact constitution of such nutrients and, although they are quite satisfactory for their primary purpose of sustaining growth of isolated members, their preparation is largely a matter of rule-of-thumb. The successful use of such complexes by the animal tissue culturists antedated by many years the development of satisfactory plant tissue culture media. Attempts were, of course, made to utilize similar media for plant tissues but, as we have already seen, these attempts all failed, with the exception of the single unconfirmed piece of work by Schmucker (1929, 110). This failure has had as one consequence the forcing of investigation into a different channel and the slow, tedious building up of a mass of information sufficient to permit the designing of nutrients made up of well-defined products of synthetic origin in place of the ill-defined organic broths and juices.

Plant tissue culture nutrients contain four categories of materials. These are, first, water; second, inorganic salts; third, organic constituents; and sometimes, fourth, coagulating agents.

*Water.* Since water makes up approximately 97 per cent of the mass of all nutrients, while some other ingredients are required in amounts repre-

sented by ten-thousandths of a per cent, the purity of the water used is of prime importance and cannot be overemphasized (White, 1932, 63, 1933, 141). "Tap water" is, of course, worse than useless in any critical studies on nutrition. Many laboratory supplies of "distilled water" are likewise worthless, because of significant amounts of impurities of many sorts. These may range from traces of lead from improperly soldered joints in faucets to distillable petroleum-oil fractions coming from the pumps used in wells or pumping plants from which the "tap water" is derived. In order to insure a truly *pure* supply, water should be first run through a softener and filter (see Chapter III), then distilled at least twice, and finally stored in vessels of hard glass or Pyrex. Carboys can be covered with inverted beakers to keep out dust or can be plugged with wads of clean cotton enclosed in well-boiled and rinsed cheesecloth. Rubber stoppers should not be used, and care must be taken that water does not come in contact with cotton plugs.

*Salts.* Plant tissues require for satisfactory growth at least eleven elements besides oxygen, hydrogen, and carbon. These are calcium, potassium, magnesium, nitrogen, sulfur, phosphorus, iron, manganese, zinc, boron, and iodine. While not essential, sodium and chlorine are to be con-



sidered as not undesirable additions. These elements are supplied in the form of inorganic salts (White, 1933, 141, 1937, 142, 143, 1938, 144; Berthelot, 1934, 136; Robbins, V. B. White, *et al.*, 1936, 139; Bonner and Addicott, 1937, 42). Because of the extremely minute quantities of some of these elements which are required and because of the toxic effects which very small traces of other elements may exert, it is essential that the salts used be of the greatest possible purity. For stock nutrients, the "C.P. Grade" products of most reliable manufacturers are satisfactory, but for critical studies it may be necessary to prepare specially purified salts. Methods of purification for particular purposes, by recrystallization or by other means, have been developed and are to be found in the literature of plant nutrition (see Arnon, 1938, 133; Arnon and Stout, 1939, 134, 135; Stout and Arnon, 1939, 140). Detailed procedures for any given problem will have to be chosen with the particular exigencies of that special problem in mind. Procedures used in the preparation of nutrients will be considered later.

*Organic materials.* The organic materials required for the nutrition of plant tissue cultures fall into four main groups: carbohydrates, vitamins and hormones, amino-acids and other simple nitrogenous substances, and organic complexes of the tissue broth type.

*Carbohydrates.* Carbohydrates make up from 0.5 per cent to 10 per cent of the mass of nutrients. They serve two main purposes: as sources of energy for the maintenance of the various living processes in the growing tissues, and as osmotic agents. Apparently the first of these, as energy source, is their major role, for nutrient solutions which have proved satisfactory for plant tissues, in marked contrast to animal tissue culture nutrients, are seldom isotonic with the tissues themselves. The osmotic value of the nutrient seldom exceeds 2 atmospheres for a tissue having an "osmotic value" of 5 to 10 atmospheres (Thielman u. Bérzin, 1927, 263). This discrepancy may be more apparent than real, since the "osmotic value" usually given for plant tissues is the plasmolytic value and may be greatly in excess of the true osmotic value of the protoplasm itself (Bennet-Clark, Greenwood and Barker, 1936, 238; Mason and Phillis, 1939, 446). That the major role of the carbohydrate is nutritional rather than osmotic is further indicated by the fact that specific carbohydrates, not carbohydrate *per se*, are required. Glucose and fructose have been employed in some media, particularly those used for the cultivation of tissues of monocotyledonous plants, but with results which have not been entirely satisfactory (Kotte, 1922, 51, 52; Robbins,

1922, 57; Robbins and Maneval, 1923, 59; Robbins and V. B. White, 1937, 178; Malyshev, 1933, 53, 54; White, 1932, 63, 1940, 172, 173). Mannose, galactose, etc., have also been tested. There is some evidence that galactose may be quite toxic (White, 1940, 173). This unsatisfactory behavior of the monosaccharides may be due in part to the difficulty in purifying them adequately (Robbins and Bartley, 1937, 170; Robbins and Schmidt, 1939, 61). All commercial preparations of monosaccharides, even the best "C.P. Grade," contain varying amounts of impurities which may be injurious. They are also relatively unstable to heat and cannot be autoclaved with impunity (Thielman, 1938, 171). Fortunately, the much more easily purified and more stable disaccharide, sucrose, is a completely satisfactory carbohydrate for all plant tissues which have so far been grown successfully (White, 1934, *et seq.*, 65, 66, 78, 172, 173; Fiedler, 1936, 45; Robbins and Bartley, 1937, 222; Robbins and Schmidt, 1938, 60; Thielman, 1938, 171). Although maltose, brown sugar (Robbins and Schmidt, 1938, 60, 1939, 224), and even dextrin (White, 1940, 173) have given excellent results in some experiments, their beneficial effects above those of sucrose are to be attributed to non-carbohydrate impurities. There is to date no evidence that any sugar other than sucrose *needs*

to be employed. Sucrose crystallizes easily so that even the commercial sugar to be bought in every grocery store is usually as pure or purer than most "C.P. Grade" chemicals, though perhaps less reliable. The use of "C.P. Grade" is to be recommended for all critical studies, as a precaution. "C.P. Grade" sucrose usually contains some calcium and magnesium, but the quantities of these two elements required for normal growth of plant tissues are so high that the traces likely to come from the sugar are too small to be of probable significance. Its content of copper and zinc may possibly be significant. It does not appear to contain significant quantities of any of the vitamins known to be important for the activity of plant tissues. (Compare Ebeling, 1914, 271, 1936, 174; Lewis, 1922, 175.)

*Vitamins and hormones.* Four oligodynamic organic substances have been reported to be important for the growth of excised plant tissues. Fortunately, all four of these substances are available as synthetic products of high purity.

The only universally necessary member of this group seems to be thiamin (vitamin B<sub>1</sub>) (Bonner, 1937, 198, 199; Robbins and Bartley, 1937, 222, 223; White, 1937, 231; Gautheret, 1938, 69; Nobécourt, 1938, 75). Thiamin or its precursors have been shown to be essential for, or at least highly beneficial to, the growth of a great variety of plant

parts. In some cases apparently either the thiazole portion of the thiamin (Robbins and Bartley, 1937, 223) or both thiazole and pyrimidine (Bonner, 1938, 199, 1940, 201; Bonner and Buckman, 1938, 239) may be substituted for thiamin itself, and there appears to be some evidence that the thiazole can be replaced by certain complex substituted pyridines, but no plant tissues appear to be able to maintain themselves for long without some source of thiamin activity. In many types of tissues, this requirement becomes evident in complete failure of the cultures if thiamin or thiazole is not included in the nutrient (Bonner, 1937, 198, 1938, 199; Robbins and Bartley, 1937, 222, 223; White, 1937, 231, 1939, 182; Bonner and Devirian, 1939, 205). Here the tissues are clearly unable to synthesize thiamin. In other cases, no growth failure may occur in the absence of an external source of thiamin, but thiamin may be recovered in increasing quantities from cultures grown for long periods, showing that the vitamin has been synthesized by the tissues in quantities sufficient to supply their growth requirements (Bonner and Devirian, 1939, 205; Nobécourt, 1940, 252; McClary, 1940, 248).

Nicotinic acid appears to be equally important for a somewhat smaller number of plants such as legumes (Bonner, 1938, 200; Addicott and Bonner,

1938, 197; Bonner and Axtman, 1937, 203; Bonner and Devirian, 1939, 205). These show a marked failure in the absence of a significant external source of nicotinic acid. Since no means of estimating nicotinic acid concentrations in small quantities of plant tissues is yet available, it is not yet possible to determine if those plant members which do not require an external source of nicotinic acid may synthesize it in quantities sufficient to satisfy their needs. It is, therefore, not possible as yet to say if all plant tissues require nicotinic acid or not. It is only clear that most tissues do not require an external source and that a few tissues do require such a source.

Pyridoxine (vitamin B<sub>6</sub>) is also clearly beneficial to many plant tissues. It has been reported to be necessary for satisfactory growth of roots of tomato (Robbins and Schmidt, 1939, 61, 224, 225; Robbins, 1940, 202; Day 1941, 208; Bonner, 1940, 201). The evidence in support of this report is not conclusive and has been opposed by other evidence (White, 1940, 232). Certainly many plant tissues can dispense with all external sources of this vitamin. As with nicotinic acid, there is no evidence either for or against its synthesis by plant tissues.

Indole acetic acid has been reported to benefit the growth of roots of maize (Geiger-Huber, 1936,

214; Geiger-Huber u. Burlet, 1936, 215; Thielman u. Pelée, 1940, 227; Duhamet, 1939, 209), callus cultures from poplar and carrot (Gautheret, 1937, 211, 1939, 212, 1940, 213; Nobécourt, 1937, 74, 1938, 75, 1939, 77), and some other types of plant tissue cultures (Fiedler, 1938, 45; Thimann and Skoog, 1940, 454). It has also been shown to be produced by some roots (Thimann, 1936, 228; Nagao, 1936, 249, 1937, 250, 1938, 251; van Overbeek, 1939, 253 254; van Overbeek and Bonner, 1938, 255). There is no evidence that it is necessary for such growth and considerable evidence to show that it may be highly injurious. Ascorbic acid, biotin, and other vitamins may likewise play an as yet undetermined role in the development of plant tissues. (Kögl u. Haagen-Smit, 1936, 358; Bonner and Bonner, 1938, 204; Duhamet, 1939, 209).

*Organic nitrogen. Amino-acids.* Many plant tissues require, in addition to water, salts, carbohydrate, and thiamin or other vitamin, some source of organic nitrogen. This may be supplied in a variety of ways. Many plant tissues will thrive on a nutrient in which this need is met by the single amino-acid glycine (glycocoll) (White, 1939, 182). This is obtainable as a synthetic product of high purity and is to be recommended wherever its use will give satisfactory results. In other cases, it may be necessary to supply a more

complex source in the form of a mixture of a number of amino-acids (White, 1935, 179, 1937, 181; Bonner and Addicott, 1937, 42). In that case, the synthetic acids should be used wherever possible, or where they are not available amino-acids of the highest possible purity should be obtained. This must be emphasized because amino-acids of "natural" origin are likely to be themselves mixtures. Thus, even the best commercial samples of leucine are known to contain considerable and highly significant amounts of methionine (Mueller, 1935, 447).

*Organic complexes.* All tissue culture media contain accessory organic (non-carbohydrate) material of some sort. The early nutrients included yeast extract (Robbins, 1922, 177; White, 1932, 63, 1934, 65, 1937, 180; Fiedler, 1936, 45), Liebig's beef extract (Kotte, 1922, 51, 52; White, 1932, 89), peptones (Robbins, 1922, 177), fibrin digests (White, 1932, 89), etc. (See also Haberlandt, 1902, 98; Loo and Loo, 1935, 216, 1936, 217). The use of thiamin, nicotinic acid, pyridoxine, the amino-acids, etc., is the outcome of a long and painstaking study of these complexes and in most cases permits us to dispense with the more complex materials entirely. This has not always proved true, however, and it is frequently desirable, when a new tissue or a member taken from a previously



unstudied species of plant is under investigation, to employ a complex source of organic adjuncts and only gradually to approach the simpler media. While peptone or fibrin proteose preparations (Fischer and Demuth, 1928, 194; Baker, 1933, 183) may sometimes be used with success, the complex of most uniform usefulness is yeast extract. Brewer's yeast is apparently superior to baker's yeast and the well known "Brewer's Yeast—Harris" has proved very satisfactory for this purpose. The standard procedure has been to weigh out 10 grams of dry "Brewer's Yeast—Harris" into a liter of distilled water, boil for one-half hour, then centrifuge, decant the supernatant, make up to one liter, divide into 50 ml. aliquots in Pyrex test tubes, and freeze at  $-15^{\circ}$  C. Ten ml. of this concentrate is sufficient to make one liter of complete nutrient (White, 1937, 180) (see later). In the frozen state this will keep indefinitely without deterioration. Fibrin digest may be prepared in a similarly concentrated form by use of pepsin or by bacterial digestion (Fischer and Demuth, 1928, 194).

*Coagulants.* While most tissues grow satisfactorily in liquid media, there are some circumstances under which it is useful to provide a semi-solid substratum (see Robbins, 1922, 57; Kotte, 1922, 51, 52; Úlehla, 1928, 115; White, 1933, 64,

1939, 78, 333; Fiedler, 1936, 45; Gautheret, 1935, 15, 1937, 68). It is, of course, desirable to keep the medium as nearly as possible of the same chemical constitution as are the liquid media. Two common coagulants are available. Gelatin has been used by some workers. This requires a concentration of 10-20 per cent to maintain a satisfactory consistency, which introduces not only a considerable risk of chemical contamination but also a marked adsorption factor. Agar, on the other hand, will give satisfactory consistency at 0.75 per cent. Commercial agar is seldom free of soluble contaminants and must be thoroughly leached. Take 60 g. of finely shredded agar (the powdered forms are likely to contain a contaminating "filler"), add 2 to 3 liters of distilled water, and set aside in a cool room. Change the water 3 times daily for a week. After thorough leaching, make up to the required volume with nutrient solution, melt, filter through cotton, and distribute to flasks or test tubes. These can then be autoclaved and set aside to cool.

*The preparation of nutrients.* While there is already a considerable number of nutrients in use having slightly different constitutions, the procedures used in their preparation will scarcely vary greatly in any important details. A stock example can, therefore, be given which can be con-

sidered typical. The nutrient used in this laboratory for all routine cultures at present (1942) has the following constitution:

| <i>Salts</i>  | <i>Mg./liter</i> | <i>Mols.</i>         |
|---|------------------|----------------------|
| MgSO <sub>4</sub>                                   | 360.0            | $3 \times 10^{-3}$   |
| Ca(NO <sub>3</sub> ) <sub>2</sub>                   | 200.0            | $1.2 \times 10^{-3}$ |
| Na <sub>2</sub> SO <sub>4</sub>                     | 200.0            | $1.4 \times 10^{-3}$ |
| KNO <sub>3</sub>                                    | 80.0             | $8 \times 10^{-4}$   |
| KCl   | 65.0             | $9 \times 10^{-4}$   |
| NaH <sub>2</sub> PO <sub>4</sub> · H <sub>2</sub> O | 16.5             | $9 \times 10^{-5}$   |
| Fe <sub>2</sub> (SO <sub>4</sub> ) <sub>3</sub>     | 2.5              | $6 \times 10^{-6}$   |
| MnSO <sub>4</sub>                                   | 4.5              | $3.7 \times 10^{-6}$ |
| ZnSO <sub>4</sub>                                   | 1.5              | $9.4 \times 10^{-6}$ |
| H <sub>3</sub> BO <sub>3</sub>                      | 1.5              | $1.2 \times 10^{-6}$ |
| KI  | 0.75             | $4.5 \times 10^{-7}$ |
| Sucrose   | 2000.0           | $6 \times 10^{-3}$   |
| Glycine   | 3.0              | $4 \times 10^{-5}$   |
| Nicotinic acid                                      | 0.5              | $4 \times 10^{-6}$   |
| Pyridoxine  | 0.1              | $4.9 \times 10^{-7}$ |
| Thiamin   | 0.1              | $2.3 \times 10^{-7}$ |

Osmotic value  $\pi = 1.8$  atm.

Since this nutrient is used in great quantity and must be made up at frequent intervals, it is not efficient to weigh out the separate constituents for each new set of nutrient. In practice only the sucrose and the iron are weighed each time, the first because any stock solution containing sucrose would ferment unless sterilized and kept sterile, the second because in solution Fe<sub>2</sub>(SO<sub>4</sub>)<sub>3</sub> rapidly oxidizes and precipitates. All the other constituents are taken from concentrated stock solutions which will keep indefinitely.

The inorganic stock solution is made up as fol-

lows: 20 g.  $\text{Ca}(\text{NO}_3)_2$ , 20 g.  $\text{Na}_2\text{SO}_4$ , 6.5 g. KCl, 8 g.  $\text{KNO}_3$ , 1.65 g.  $\text{NaH}_2\text{PO}_4$ , 0.45 g.  $\text{MnSO}_4$ , 0.15 g.  $\text{ZnSO}_4$ , 0.15 g.  $\text{H}_3\text{BO}_3$ , and 0.075 g. KI are dissolved together in 8 liters of distilled water. 36 g. of  $\text{MgSO}_4$  are dissolved in 2 liters of distilled water. The two solutions are then mixed slowly, stirring constantly. Some insoluble precipitate may form in the bottom of the bottle. The resulting solution is stored in a dark bottle to prevent growth of algae. Ten liters of this solution are sufficient to make 100 liters of nutrient, taking 100 ml. for each liter of nutrient required.

The stock solution of accessory organic materials is made up as follows: Three grams of glycine, 500 mg. of nicotinic acid, 100 mg. of pyridoxine, and 100 mg. of thiamin are dissolved together in 1 liter of distilled water. This is pipetted into Pyrex test tubes in 10 ml. aliquots and stored in the icebox at  $-5^\circ \text{C}$ . A liter of this stock will make 1000 liters of nutrient, taking 1

---

\* For callus only.

\*\*\* "Gelose"—presumably means agar, but is not so specified, 15, 72.

† Extract of 100 mg. dried brewer's yeast (Harris).

‡ Gautheret says merely: "Knop solution,  $\frac{1}{2}$  strength," 72. Since there are many different formulae in use for "Knop solution," this is indefinite. The concentrations given above correspond to a " $\frac{1}{2}$  strength solution" of the "dilute formula" given by Palladin, 449, for use with young plants. The solution for mature plants is given with a concentration 5 times that of the "dilute" solution and 10 times the concentration given in this table.

§ Gautheret says: "Take 10 drops of Berthelot's solution to each liter of nutrient," 72. Assuming 20 drops = 1 ml., Berthelot's, 136, formula would give approximately the concentrations shown in this table.

TABLE 1  
*Nutrients commonly used for cultivation of plant tissues*

| Nutrient ingredient | White   | Robbins   | Bonner                  | Gautheret                     |
|---------------------|---|---|-------------------------|-------------------------------|
|                     | Roots: tomato, sun-flower, etc.<br>Callus: tobacco, 66, 182 | Roots: radish, clover, mustard, buckwheat, etc., 66 | Roots: tomato, 225      | Roots: wheat, vetch, etc., 15 |
|                     |   |   | Roots: tomato, 201      | Callus: willow, 15            |
|                     |   |   | Roots: pea, radish, 201 |                               |
|                     |   |   | Roots: flax, 201        | Callus: carrot, 72            |

Grams per liter

|                |       |       |       |       |       |       |       |       |       |
|----------------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| Sucrose .....  | 20    | 20    | 20    | 20    | 20    | 20    | ..... | ..... | ..... |
| Dextrose ..... | ..... | ..... | ..... | ..... | ..... | ..... | 20    | 20    | 20    |
| Agar .....     | 7.5*  | ..... | ..... | ..... | ..... | ..... | 15**  | 15**  | 13**  |

Milligrams per liter

[illegible]

ml. for each liter of nutrient required. A comparison of this nutrient with a number of others in common use is given in the accompanying table.

A convenient experimental series includes 200 cultures requiring 10 liters of nutrient. Each culture receives 50 ml. of solution. To prepare nutrient for such a series, 200 g. of sucrose are dissolved in 2 liters of double-distilled water. In 1 liter of water are dissolved 25 mg. of  $\text{Fe}_2(\text{SO}_4)_3$ . These are mixed, 1 liter of stock salt solution and 10 ml. of glycine-thiamin solution are added, and the whole is made up to 10 liters. This is then distributed to the culture flasks in 50 ml. aliquots, using a special semi-automatic measuring burette (Fig. 31) which greatly facilitates rapid manipulation. For experimental nutrients (as distinct from stock nutrients) where each liter differs from each other one in constitution, it is best to use graduates instead of burettes for this distribution. After all the flasks are correctly charged with nutrient, they are plugged with cheesecloth-covered non-absorbent cotton plugs, capped with inverted 50 ml. beakers, and sterilized.

*Sterilization.* Most nutrients used for plant tissue cultures contain sucrose and are unaffected by autoclaving. The usual routine is to sterilize for 20 minutes at 18–20 lbs. pressure. It has been found convenient to place flasks of nutrient as soon as filled in galvanized iron trays  $13'' \times 21'' \times 3\frac{1}{2}''$ .

Each tray holds forty 125 ml. Erlenmeyer flasks and three trays (120 flasks) can be sterilized at once in a 20-inch autoclave. They can then be conveniently handled and stored without removing from the trays. While autoclaving is satisfactory for most nutrients likely to be used in plant tissue culture work, those containing dextrose are somewhat thermolabile and are better sterilized either in the Arnold type of sterilizer or by filtration through Seitz filters or Berkefeld candles. These methods are all so thoroughly standardized in general microbiological practice that they need not be described here.

*Storage.* Once sterilized, the stock nutrients will keep indefinitely aside from the gradual concentration which results from evaporation. Because of this last factor, it is best not to use nutrients that are more than a month old unless they have been stored in a moist room.

*Special nutrients.* The details presented above apply specifically to the standard nutrient used for the maintenance of all stock cultures in this laboratory. This standard nutrient is employed in most nutrition experiments as a basis of comparison designated as the control. Experiments involving the stimulatory or depressant effects of increased concentrations of standard ingredients or of materials not present in this nutrient can be set up merely by adding the required materials

## EXAMPLE 1

To study effects of various concentrations and combinations of thiamin and vitamin B<sub>6</sub>

November, 1939

| No. | Final solution contains in addition to salts and sucrose, the following per liter | Stock solution = 320 g. sucrose, 1600 ml. salt solution, 10 mg. Fe <sub>2</sub> (SO <sub>4</sub> ) <sub>3</sub> in 8 liters H <sub>2</sub> O | Glycine solution = 300 mg. in 1 liter H <sub>2</sub> O | Thiamin solution = 100 mg. in 1 liter H <sub>2</sub> O | Pyridoxine solution = 100 mg. in 1 liter H <sub>2</sub> O | Water |
|-----|---|--|--|--|---|-------|
|     |   | Milliliters per liter  |  |  |   |       |
| 1   | 3.0 mg. glycine .....   | 500  | 10   | .....  | .....   | 490   |
| 2   | 0.1 mg. thiamin (B <sub>1</sub> ) .....   | "  | .....  | 1  | .....   | 499   |
| 3   | 1.0 mg. pyridoxine (B <sub>6</sub> ) .....  | "  | .....  | .....  | 10  | 490   |
| 4   | 3.0 mg. glycine + 0.1 mg. B <sub>1</sub> *  | "  | 10   | 1  | .....   | 489   |
| 5   | + 3.0 mg. B <sub>6</sub> .....  | 500  | 10   | .....  | 30  | 460   |
| 6   | 3.0 mg. + 1.0 " " .....   | "  | "  | .....  | 10  | 480   |
| 7   | glycine + 0.3 " " .....   | "  | "  | .....  | 3   | 487   |
| 8   | + 0.1 " " .....   | "  | "  | .....  | 1   | 489   |
| 9   | + 3.0 mg. B <sub>6</sub> .....  | 500  | .....  | 1  | 30  | 469   |
| 10  | 0.1 mg. + 1.0 " " .....   | "  | .....  | "  | 10  | 489   |
| 11  | thiamin + 0.3 " " .....   | "  | .....  | "  | 3   | 496   |
| 12  | + 0.1 " " .....   | "  | .....  | "  | 1   | 498   |
| 13  | 3 mg. + 3.0 mg. B <sub>6</sub> .....  | 500  | 10   | 1  | 30  | 459   |
| 14  | glycine + 1.0 " " .....   | "  | "  | "  | 10  | 479   |
| 15  | + 0.1 mg. + 0.3 " " .....   | "  | "  | "  | 3   | 486   |
| 16  | thiamin + 0.1 " " .....   | "  | "  | "  | 1   | 488   |

\* Control.



## EXAMPLE 2

To study effects of various concentrations of three iron salts

May, 1940

| No. | Final solution contains, in addition to salts other than iron, sucrose, glycine, and thiamin, the following per liter | Stock solution = 320 g. sucrose, 1600 ml. salt solution, 16 ml. glycine-thiamin sol., 8 liters H <sub>2</sub> O | Fe <sub>2</sub> (SO <sub>4</sub> ) <sub>3</sub> solution = 50 mg. in 1 liter H <sub>2</sub> O | Fe(NO <sub>3</sub> ) <sub>3</sub> · 9H <sub>2</sub> O solution = 101 mg. in 1 liter H <sub>2</sub> O | FeCl <sub>3</sub> · 6H <sub>2</sub> O solution = 67.5 mg. in 1 liter H <sub>2</sub> O | Water |  |
|-----|---|---|---|--|---|-------|--|
|     |   | Milliliters per liter   |   |  |   |       |  |
|     |   |   |   |  |   |       |  |
| 1   | .....   | 500   | .....   | .....  | .....   | 500   |  |
| 2   | 0.6 × 10 <sup>-8</sup> M Fe <sub>2</sub> (SO <sub>4</sub> ) <sub>3</sub>  | "   | 5   | .....  | .....   | 495   |  |
| 3   | 3.6 " "   | "   | 17  | .....  | .....   | 483   |  |
| 4   | 6.0 " "   | "   | 50  | .....  | .....   | 450   |  |
| 5   | 36.0 " "  | "   | 167   | .....  | .....   | 333   |  |
| 6   | 60.0 " "  | "   | 500   | .....  | .....   | ..... |  |
| 7   | 0.6 " Fe(NO <sub>3</sub> ) <sub>3</sub> · 9H <sub>2</sub> O   | 500   | .....   | 5  | .....   | 495   |  |
| 8   | 3.0 " "   | "   | .....   | 17   | .....   | 483   |  |
| 9   | 6.0 " "   | "   | .....   | 50   | .....   | 450   |  |
| 10  | 36.0 " "  | "   | .....   | 167  | .....   | 333   |  |
| 11  | 60.0 " "  | "   | .....   | 500  | .....   | ..... |  |
| 12  | 0.6 " FeCl <sub>3</sub> · 6H <sub>2</sub> O   | 500   | .....   | .....  | 5   | 495   |  |
| 13  | 3.6 " "   | "   | .....   | .....  | 17  | 483   |  |
| 14  | 6.0 " "   | "   | .....   | .....  | 50  | 450   |  |
| 15  | 36.0 " "  | "   | .....   | .....  | 167   | 333   |  |
| 16  | 60.0 " "  | "   | .....   | .....  | 500   | ..... |  |

EXAMPLE 3  
To study effects of omitting singly each constituent of the nutrient

| No. | Final solution lacks                            | Milliliters per liter                          |                               |                              |   |  |                                     |                          |   |   |   |   |  |                         |       |
|-----|---|--|-------------------------------|------------------------------|---|--|-------------------------------------|--------------------------|---|---|---|---|--|-------------------------|-------|
|     |   | Sucrose<br>320 g. in 8 liters H <sub>2</sub> O | Glycine<br>300 mg. in 1 liter | Thiamin<br>10 mg. in 100 ml. | Ca(NO <sub>3</sub> ) <sub>2</sub><br>10 g. in 1 liter | MgSO <sub>4</sub><br>3.5 g. in 1 liter | KNO <sub>3</sub><br>8 g. in 1 liter | KCl<br>6.5 g. in 1 liter | KH <sub>2</sub> PO <sub>4</sub><br>1.25 g. in 1 liter | Fe <sub>2</sub> (SO <sub>4</sub> ) <sub>3</sub><br>250 mg. in 1 liter | MnSO <sub>4</sub><br>440 mg. in 1 liter | ZnSO <sub>4</sub><br>150 mg. in 1 liter | H <sub>2</sub> BO <sub>3</sub><br>163 mg. in 1 liter | KI<br>75 mg. in 1 liter | Water |
| 1   | Nothing*  | 500  | 10                            | 1                            | 10  | 10                                     | 10                                  | 10                       | 10  | 10  | 10                                      | 10                                      | 10   | 10                      | 389   |
| 2   | Sucrose   | 500  | 10                            | 1                            | 10  | 10                                     | 10                                  | 10                       | 10  | 10  | 10                                      | 10                                      | 10   | 10                      | 889   |
| 3   | Glycine   | 500  | 10                            | 10                           | 10  | 10                                     | 10                                  | 10                       | 10  | 10  | 10                                      | 10                                      | 10   | 10                      | 399   |
| 4   | Thiamin   | "  | 10                            | 10                           | 10  | 10                                     | 10                                  | 10                       | 10  | 10  | 10                                      | 10                                      | 10   | 10                      | 390   |
| 5   | Ca(NO <sub>3</sub> ) <sub>2</sub>               | "  | 10                            | 1                            | 10  | 10                                     | 10                                  | 10                       | 10  | 10  | 10                                      | 10                                      | 10   | 10                      | 399   |
| 6   | MgSO <sub>4</sub>                               | "  | 10                            | 1                            | 10  | 10                                     | 10                                  | 10                       | 10  | 10  | 10                                      | 10                                      | 10   | 10                      | "     |
| 7   | KNO <sub>3</sub>                                | "  | 10                            | 1                            | 10  | 10                                     | 10                                  | 10                       | 10  | 10  | 10                                      | 10                                      | 10   | 10                      | "     |
| 8   | KCl   | "  | 10                            | 1                            | 10  | 10                                     | 10                                  | 10                       | 10  | 10  | 10                                      | 10                                      | 10   | 10                      | "     |
| 9   | KH <sub>2</sub> PO <sub>4</sub>                 | "  | 10                            | 1                            | 10  | 10                                     | 10                                  | 10                       | 10  | 10  | 10                                      | 10                                      | 10   | 10                      | "     |
| 10  | Fe <sub>2</sub> (SO <sub>4</sub> ) <sub>3</sub> | "  | 10                            | 1                            | 10  | 10                                     | 10                                  | 10                       | 10  | 10  | 10                                      | 10                                      | 10   | 10                      | "     |
| 11  | MnSO <sub>4</sub>                               | "  | 10                            | 1                            | 10  | 10                                     | 10                                  | 10                       | 10  | 10  | 10                                      | 10                                      | 10   | 10                      | "     |
| 12  | ZnSO <sub>4</sub>                               | "  | 10                            | 1                            | 10  | 10                                     | 10                                  | 10                       | 10  | 10  | 10                                      | 10                                      | 10   | 10                      | "     |
| 13  | H <sub>2</sub> BO <sub>3</sub>                  | "  | 10                            | 1                            | 10  | 10                                     | 10                                  | 10                       | 10  | 10  | 10                                      | 10                                      | 10   | 10                      | "     |
| 14  | KI  | "  | 10                            | 1                            | 10  | 10                                     | 10                                  | 10                       | 10  | 10  | 10                                      | 10                                      | 10   | 10                      | "     |
| 15  | Glyc. and thiamin                               | "  | 10                            | 1                            | 10  | 10                                     | 10                                  | 10                       | 10  | 10  | 10                                      | 10                                      | 10   | 10                      | "     |
| 16  | KNO <sub>3</sub> and KCl ..                     | "  | 10                            | 1                            | 10  | 10                                     | 10                                  | 10                       | 10  | 10  | 10                                      | 10                                      | 10   | 10                      | 389   |

\* Control.

either before or after sterilization. Experiments involving omission or reduction in concentration of the constituents of this nutrient itself (salts, sugar, thiamin, etc.) require the setting up of special nutrients. While this approach is familiar to all physiologists and experienced workers may have their own methods of preparing such nutrients, it seems desirable to outline briefly the simplified procedures developed here. Three examples will be given.

Each of the three sets of experiments outlined above involves a comparison of 16 different solutions, each provided in a quantity of one liter. Since 50 ml. of nutrients are used for each culture (see later), this provides 20 replications in each nutrient. By employing condensed records of this sort and simplified procedures, two men working together can easily make up nutrient for 15 or 20 sets of cultures in a half day, which is about the maximum that can be satisfactorily inoculated and measured in a day. Sets of 16 have been found most practical.

Nutrients containing special ingredients not discussed here may require special treatment which the individual worker will have to adapt to his particular needs.

#### SUMMARY

Nutrients for plant tissue cultures are for the most part made up of definitely known synthetic

or highly purified ingredients. These include salts of various kinds (chlorides, nitrates, sulfates, phosphates, and iodides of calcium, magnesium, potassium, sodium, iron, manganese, zinc, and boron); carbohydrate (especially sucrose); organic nitrogenous materials (amino-acids, tissue digest peptides, peptones, etc.); hormones and vitamins (thiamin, nicotinic acid, vitamin B<sub>6</sub>, indole acetic acid, etc.); and sometimes coagulating agents (agar-agar, gelatine, etc.).

Standard procedures for the preparation of nutrients are described.

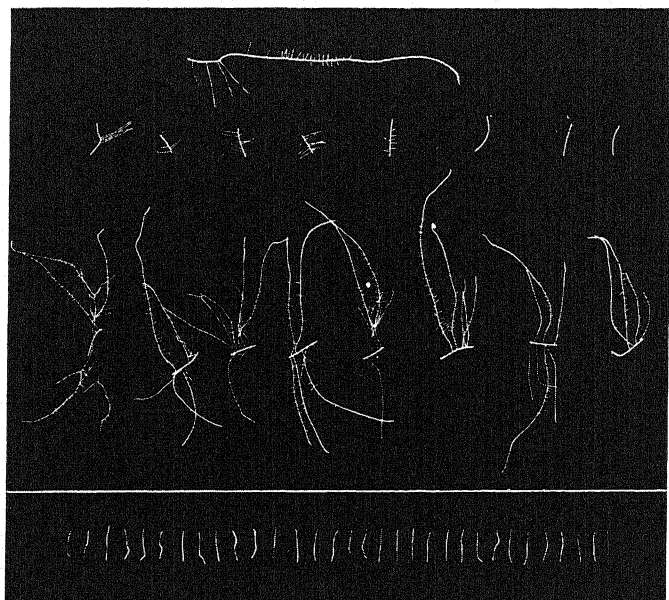


FIG. 34. At the top, a healthy excised tomato root at the end of a one-week passage. In the second row a similar root has been divided into eight pieces to be used in setting up a stock of comparable root tips for experimental use. The ninth, apical piece was discarded. Third row, eight root segments similar to those shown above after a second week's cultivation in fresh nutrient. At the bottom are 32 selected root tips, all derived under comparable conditions from the single apex used as inoculum two passages earlier.

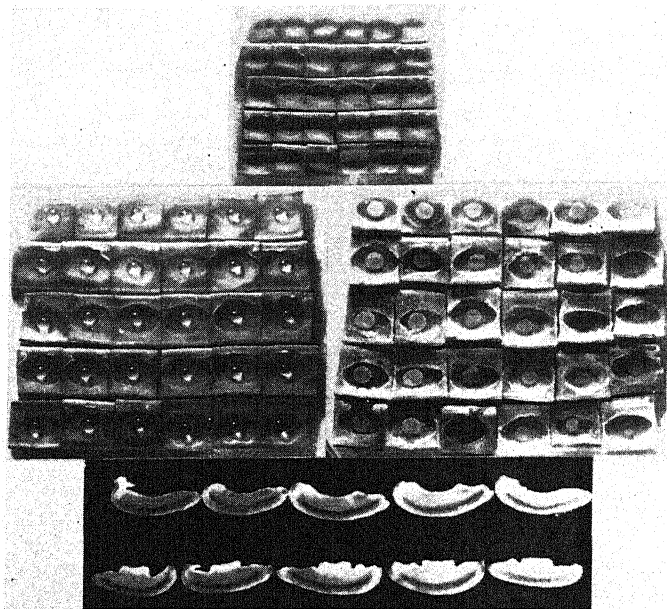


FIG. 35. Bean pod segments used as test material for plant wound stimulants. Above: segments from the centers of five selected pods, each divided into six pieces so that each piece contains the depression left by a single ovule. Center, left: a drop of the solution under investigation is placed in each depression and the series placed in a moist chamber; right: a similar series 48 hours later showing a small intumescence at the site of each drop of liquid. Below, top row: sections through a control series treated with distilled water; bottom row: a similar series treated with a solution of "traumatin." (From Bonner, J., and English, J. 1938. *Plant Physiol.* 13: 335, fig. 1, 342.)

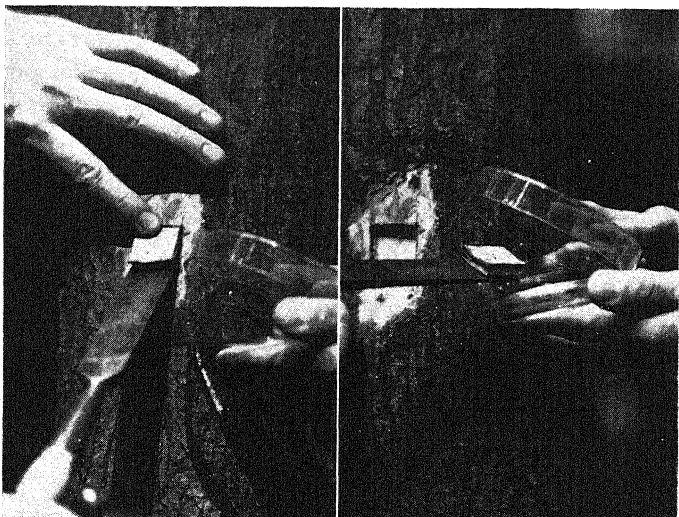


FIG. 36. Removal of blocks containing undisturbed cambium from large trees. The surface bark is shaved off, four deep incisions made, well into the sap wood, and the block removed with a chisel and transferred to a sterile Petri dish in which it can be carried to the laboratory.

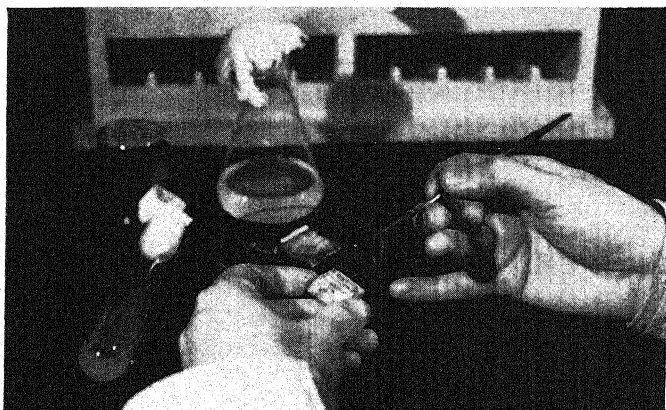


FIG. 37. In the laboratory the block is broken open carefully at the cambium level and fragments of tissue removed for cultivation on nutrient agar.

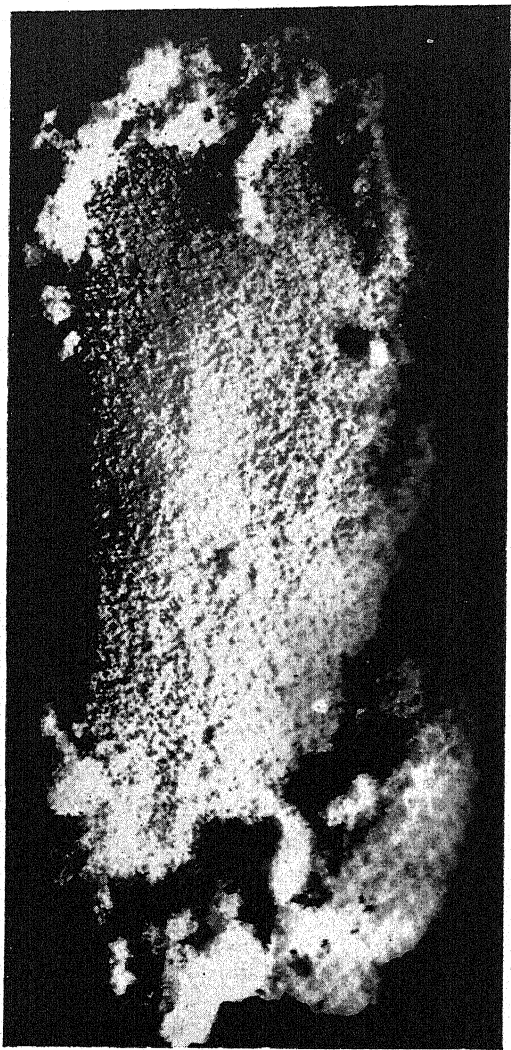


FIG. 38. Cambial culture of *Salix caprea* after four months *in vitro*. (From Gautheret, R. J. 1937. La culture des tissus végétaux. Actualités scientifiques et industrielles 554, plate 2, 16.)



## CHAPTER VI

### HOW CULTURES ARE STARTED

As we have already seen, the two types of plant material which have so far proved most useful in plant tissue culture work have been, first, root tips and, second, cambium or procambium. Most of the following discussion will apply to these types.

*Seedling roots.* Root tips are perhaps subjected in nature to more environmental vicissitudes than are any other types of meristems. They are, therefore, relatively resistant to injury. Nevertheless, once a root is growing either in the soil or in a culture medium, if it is not already aseptic it cannot be rendered so by any but rather drastic means which may well influence its subsequent behavior. It is, therefore, important that roots for culture be obtained wherever possible from sterile seedlings and, moreover, it is highly desirable that the seeds themselves be rendered aseptic with as little chemical interference as possible in order that consideration of potential after-effects need not enter into the interpretation of results. In many cases, aseptic seeds can be ob-

tained without any chemical treatment whatever. This is true of all seeds which, when ripe, are enclosed in fleshy, woody, or membranaceous fruits (tomato, apple, squash, bean, tobacco, etc.). Sound, clean fruits of these plants are opened by breaking or tearing in such a way that no instrument penetrates to the seed cavity. The seeds themselves are then lifted out with sterile needles or forceps, placed on slips of sterile paper in Petri dishes, and allowed to dry under conditions which will preclude the entry of contaminants from outside. These seeds can then be used for starting cultures without further treatment (White, 1934, 65).

Seeds contained in very small fruits, in drupes or achenes, or the seeds of Gymnosperms cannot be obtained in a uniformly aseptic condition by mechanical manipulation alone. These must therefore be surface-sterilized. Where ultraviolet light is available, this may sometimes serve as a sterilizing agent, but it is rather uncertain since spores may easily become lodged in crevices in the seed surface which are protected from illumination even if the seeds are constantly shaken. The most satisfactory result is to be obtained with bromine gas (Klein u. Kisser, 1924, 299; Burlet, 1936, 207). Seeds are shaken for 5 to 10 minutes in a bottle containing a few ml. of 1 per cent

bromine-water. They are then spread out on sterile filter paper in Petri dishes. The bromine quickly penetrates all crevices in the seed coats, killing most if not all contaminants, yet evaporates completely leaving no traces to affect the seedlings. In spite of its obvious advantages, bromine must be handled with great care, under a hood, so that some workers prefer to use other reagents. A solution of calcium hypochlorite containing 1 per cent chlorine will give fairly satisfactory results (Wilson, 1915, 455; White, 1932, 63) if seeds are shaken therein for 15 to 30 minutes, then washed in sterile distilled water and placed in Petri dishes. The time required for complete sterilization will vary considerably with the species of seed, as will the amount of injury to the seedling which usually results. Each species must be studied specially. Dakin solution (Parker, 1938, 26) is also good. Mercuric chloride, 85 per cent alcohol, "Uspulin," and other disinfectants have been used by particular workers. The methods of using these reagents are standard biological procedures and need not be presented in detail.

Once sterilized, the seeds may be placed for germination either directly in flasks or tubes of nutrient or in Petri dishes on filter paper moistened with sterile water or on agar. If sown on a semi-solid substratum such as agar, several

seeds can be placed in each receptacle since any contaminant which may be present on one seed will not easily spread to another. If placed directly in a nutrient solution, only a single seed should be put in each container. The flasks, Petri dishes, or test tubes containing the seeds should be set aside in darkness until the seedling roots have attained a length of 10 to 15 mm. The roots are then severed with scissors or scalpel at a length of 3 mm. or more and transferred to the nutrient in which they are to be grown.

*Adventitious roots.* While most cultures can best be started from seedling roots, conditions occasionally arise which cannot be fulfilled by such materials. This has been notably true of certain virus "cultures" in which no method of inoculating virus into roots growing *in vitro* has yet been found (White, 1934, 438). It is then necessary to resort to adventitious roots coming from cuttings of infected plants (see later). With plants like tomato which root easily, this presents no great difficulty. Cuttings are made from rapidly growing plants having a lush growth and the leaves are removed, using a sharp clean scalpel. The cuttings are then suspended in large flasks or crocks containing a little water in the bottom and lined with moist blotting paper so as to provide a saturated atmosphere (Fig. 32). These are set in

darkness or in dim light until adventitious roots emerge. The cuttings are removed in a sterile room, the roots carefully severed and placed one by one in flasks of nutrient. (Fig. 33). Using this simple procedure, many roots will, of course, be contaminated with molds or bacteria and must be discarded. Some, however, will regularly remain sterile. These can then be made to serve as the origins for clones of sterile root cultures each carrying the virus of the disease with which the original cutting was infected. With slower-rooting cuttings, greater precautions against contamination will be necessary, and the surfaces will have to be sterilized by some one of the methods described for the sterilization of seeds. Whatever sterilizing agent is used, it must be removed by thorough washing with sterile distilled water. The containers must also be sterile and all manipulations must be carried out aseptically. A high yield of sound aseptic rootlets cannot be expected under these exacting conditions, but they can be obtained with some patience.

*Cambium.* Theoretically the cambium layer, since it continues to grow throughout the life of the plant, for hundreds and even thousands of years in some cases, should be excellent material for cultivation. Practically, however, it offers of

all the major meristematic regions except the medullary rays perhaps most difficulties in the way of isolating fragments aseptically without too great injury (White, 1931, 32). Most of the work carried out to date on the cultivation of cambium *in vitro* has been done by Gautheret (Gautheret, 1934, 67, 1935, 15, 1937, 68, 1938, 69, 70, 1939, 71, 72, 212, 1940, 73; Gioelli, 1937, 291, 1938, 292).

To isolate a block of cambium, all six faces of the block must be cut, and this must be done without carrying contaminating spores from the surface of the plant onto the excised fragment. To perform this operation on the cambium of small woody stems would be almost impossible. It can, however, be successfully carried out on large trees. A piece of bark an inch or more square is cut out with a sharp knife or chisel, being careful to cut well into the sap wood (Fig. 36). Gautheret performed this operation with carefully sterilized instruments after surface-sterilizing the tree trunk (Gautheret, 1935, 15), but these precautions are not necessary at this stage. The block is placed in a clean container and transferred to the laboratory. There, under aseptic conditions, it is split at the cambium level in such a way that neither instruments nor possibly contaminated tissue surfaces come in contact with the center of the exposed surface. Pieces of cambium are then

carefully cut or torn out of this sterile surface using sterile instruments and are transferred to nutrient solution, preferably to a semi-solid substratum (Fig. 37). Such fragments should be quite sterile. Cultures of this sort have been prepared from willow, poplar, beech, oak, pine, and other trees. Gautheret's most successful cultures were of cambium from *Salix capraea* (Gautheret, 1935, 15, 1937, 68, 1938, 69). The growth obtained is of a loose, fungoid character and in general develops rather slowly (Figs. 38, 39).

*Procambial strands.* The procedure to be used in isolating procambial strands for cultivation is somewhat similar to that employed with cambium (White, 1939, 78). This tissue can, of course, be most easily removed from stems of succulent individuals. Rapidly growing tips of tobacco, squash, sunflower, and similar plants make excellent material. Terminal pieces about 8 to 10 inches long are severed and the leaves carefully removed with a sharp scalpel or razor, leaving as little stub as possible. Under aseptic conditions, the epidermis of the distal 1 or 2 inches is stripped off, beginning from the proximal end and taking care that the exposed surfaces are not touched by unsterile instruments or epidermis fragments. When the terminal portion is completely exposed, the growing point is grasped with sterile forceps and bent

sharply sidewise so that the stem breaks. The break will take place in the region of active growth where the cells possess a maximum of turgor with a minimum of cell-wall deposit. Slices about 0.5 mm. thick are made across the stem in or near this region and the pieces transferred to nutrient agar or to very shallow layers of liquid nutrient. Proliferation from very young tissues will take place in all parts, while from older tissues only the region of the provascular strands will proliferate (Fig. 17). Tubercles of white or green callus are formed on the uppermost cut surface. It usually requires 10 days or 2 weeks for these to attain a sufficient size to justify further division. These tubercles can then be separated from the underlying non-proliferative tissue, or the culture can be simply divided into a number of fragments containing both growing and non-proliferative material, and the pieces transferred to fresh nutrient. Cultures from young carrot roots, potato tubers, kohlrabi, and other fleshy, only partially differentiated members can be made in a similar fashion. A similar technique is used in making cultures from secondary crown-gall tumors (White and Braun, 1941, 335, 1942, 336, 337).

*Miscellaneous materials.* The excision of intercalary meristems such as those of grasses requires much the same technique as that for the procam-



bial strands. Medullary rays, the multiple pericycle, and certain phelloderm cambiums should in theory be fairly satisfactory experimental material, albeit difficult to isolate. They have apparently not been studied to date. There are in plants, of course, many other regions which show meristematic activity. Very young seed primordia are made up entirely of meristematic cells and are easily removed with little danger of contamination and a minimum of trauma (White, 1932, 89; Moebius, 1928, 105; Molliard, 1921, 106). All of the tissues of young ovaries are likewise meristematic as are some of those of more mature ovaries (Tukey, 1937, 114). Wehnelt (1937, 230) and subsequently Bonner and English (1938, 342) have taken advantage of this fact and used tissue from the inner surface of bean pods as material for the study of proliferation. Bonner has had some success with tissue cultures of this material (Bonner, 1936, 91) (Fig. 35). The meristematic centers in the leaves of *Begonia*, *Bryophyllum* (Naylor, 1931, 308), *Saintpaulia* (Naylor and Johnson, 1937, 309), *Chlorophytum* (Naylor and Sperry, 1938, 310), *Camptosorus*, etc., and the stipular gemmae of *Marattia* should theoretically be excellent material with which to work but have not been studied as yet. Many "mature" regions may also be stimulated to renewed activity by proximity to a

wound (Haberlandt, 1913, 294, 1914, 295, 1919, 245, 296, 1921, 354, 1922, 355; Reiche, 1924, 369; Wehnelt, 1937, 230; Bonner and English, 1938, 342; Sinnott and Bloch, 1941, 324) or by the injection of such substances as the gall-inducing secretions of certain insects (Küster, 1911, 300). Only the easiest types of materials have, up to the present, been carefully studied. The field open to future investigation is obviously very large.

#### SUMMARY

Cultures may be started from seeds, from cuttings, or from excised fragments. In any case, the final result must be a relatively uninjured, aseptic mass of tissue, and the procedures for obtaining such masses, either with or without the intervention of chemical disinfectants, are of the greatest importance. These procedures for obtaining aseptic seeds, adventitious roots, etc., and for dissecting cambium and procambial tissues are described and figured. Procedures for handling other miscellaneous meristematic tissues are also presented.

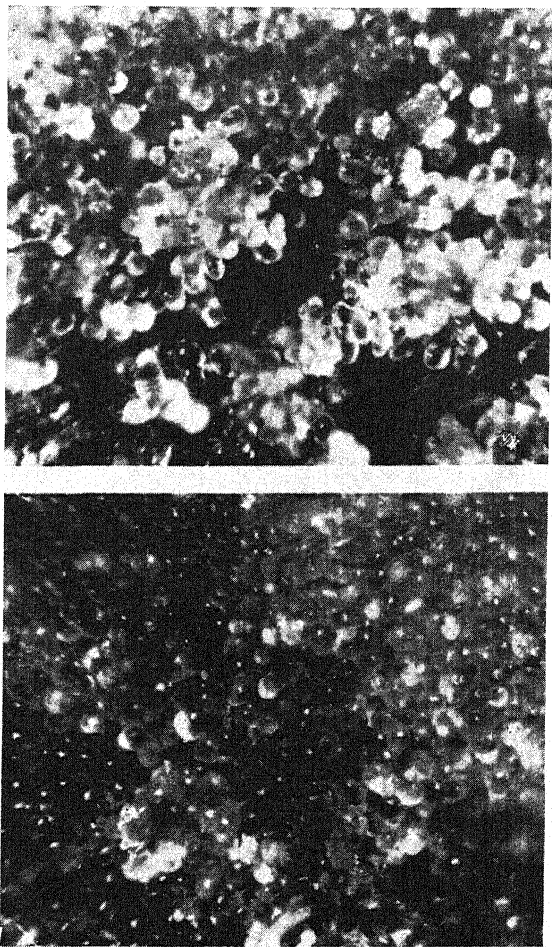


FIG. 39. Two views of the surface of cambial cultures of *Abies pectinata* after 8 days (below) and one month (above) *in vitro*. (From Gautheret, R. J. 1935. Recherches sur la culture des tissus végétaux. (Thèse) 215, plate XV, 15.)

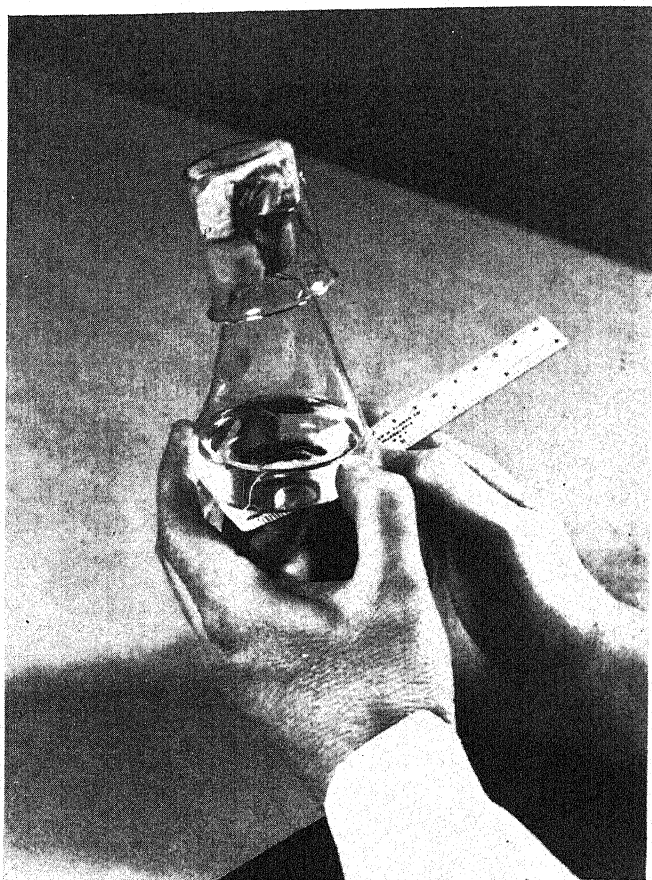


FIG. 40. How root cultures are measured. The flask containing the culture is held in the left hand. The right hand holds a flexible celluloid rule which is placed under the flask and is bent to a curvature approximating that of the root. With the zero point under the base of the root, a very accurate estimate can be made of the root's length. In expert hands the error of such measurements will seldom exceed 3 or 4 per cent of the true length.

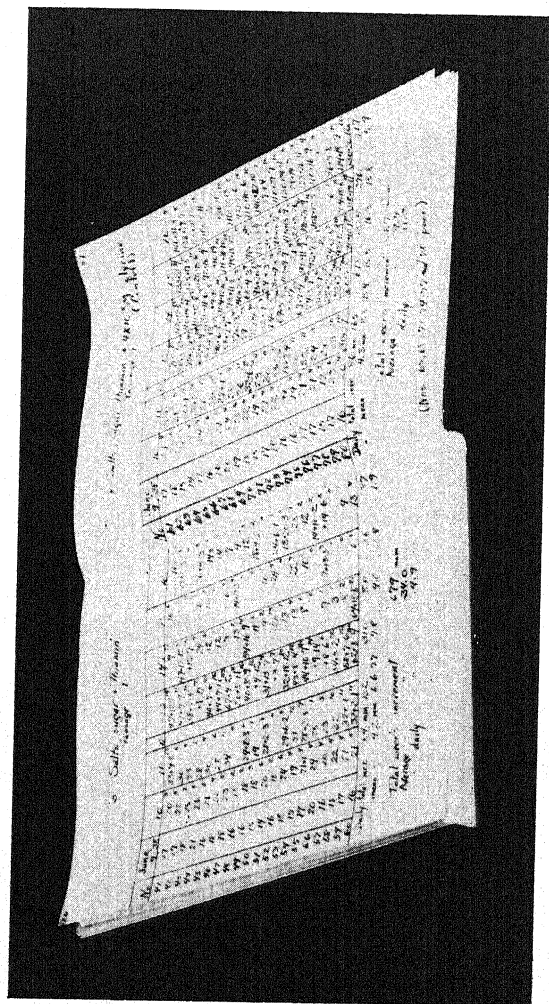


FIG. 41. Two typical pages from a record book, showing the method of arranging the pages for comparing the effects of two nutrients, recording lengths, numbers and lengths of branches, increments, etc.

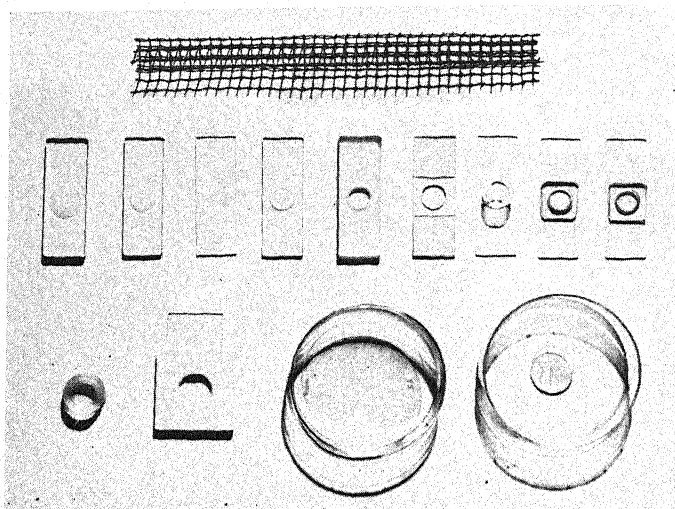


FIG. 42. Equipment used in making hanging-drop cultures and other cultures of small masses of tissue. Top: wire rack for clean  $22 \times 22$  mm. square cover glasses. Middle row, from left to right:  $1 \times 3$  inch slides provided with three sizes of hollow-ground cavities; concentrically grooved depression slide; heavy slide with deep flat-bottomed molded cavity; pierced slide (see Fig. 27); slide with glass ring (Van Tiegham cell); slide with removable, ground, pierced plate, without and with suspended culture. Bottom row, left to right: small embryological watch glass with round-bottomed, molded cavity; Maximow embryological watch glass with flat plate-glass bottom; two sizes of chemical watch glasses in Petri dishes, used as moist chambers, as employed by Fell for tissue and organ cultures.

## CHAPTER VII

### CULTURE TECHNIQUES

Tissue cultures, whether of plant or animal materials, have for the most part been carried out in three general classes of containers, each class being especially adapted to a particular type of problem. These are, first, cultures in flasks or special vessels of one type or another adapted to the study of relatively large masses of tissue under conditions which involve considerable experimental manipulation (Carrel, 1912, 125, 1923, 126, 127; Maximow, 1925, 420; Fell, 1928, 392; Robbins, 1922, 57; White, 1934, 65; Bonner and Addicott, 1937, 42; Parker, 1934, 427, 1936, 428, 429); second, cultures in test tubes, likewise adapted to the study of masses of tissues but in general less suitable to their manipulation (Kotte, 1922, 51, 52; Malyshev, 1932, 53, 54; Fiedler, 1936, 45; Gey, 1933, 129); and, third, hanging-drop cultures adapted to the minute study and observation of very small pieces of tissues (Harrison, 1907, 131; Burrows, 1910, 117; Carrel, 1911, 120; Lewis and Lewis, 1911, 149; Chambers, 1923, 43, 1924, 44; White, 1932, 89). By far the most important

of these categories in the preliminary attack upon most problems is the first, since for most materials it possesses, of all the methods of approach, the greatest reliability and flexibility.

Bonner (1940, 201) carries root cultures in Petri dishes, but these seem to the writer of this volume to offer no significant advantages over flasks. Certainly they must be handled with much greater care to avoid slopping, and would seem much more likely to become contaminated. Fell (1928 *et seq.*, 392-401) uses, for animal tissue cultures, shallow vessels of the "salt-cellar" or embryological watch glass type placed in Petri dishes acting as moist chambers. These may have distinct advantages for cultures of small volume such as callus cultures but cannot be used for roots.

*The preparation of stocks.* In any piece of scientific work, one of the prime requisites if significant results are to be obtained is *an adequate supply of uniform, duplicable material* with which to work. The tissue culture technique has in this respect one great advantage over most other culture practices—that it permits the building up of vegetatively derived clones, all members derived by division of a single ancestral fragment so that all members have exactly the same genetic constitution. The question of genetic uniformity and stability is entirely eliminated. One might expect



that under these circumstances all members of such a clone could be counted on to behave exactly alike under a given set of conditions. This is generally true of animal tissue cultures (Ebeling, 1921, 456; Parker, 1932, 422, 423, 1938, 26) and cultures of undifferentiated plant materials (White, 1939, 78). It does not, however, appear to be the case with cultures of excised roots (Robbins and Bartley, 1937, 170; Robbins and Schmidt, 1938, 60, 1939, 61; Robbins and V. B. White, 1936, 62; Delarge, 1938, 280, 1939, 281). Sister cultures, placed under supposedly identical conditions, may behave in markedly different manners. This is one of the most disconcerting phenomena encountered in the field of plant tissue cultures. In mycological and bacteriological studies, the inoculation of two fragments of mycelium or two bacterial cells can be counted upon to give rise to colonies of like appearance, aside from the rather infrequent occurrence of saltations. Why is this not equally true of root segments of higher plants?

The difference is probably more apparent than real. When a fragment of fungus mycelium is transplanted, it branches rapidly to form a discoid or spherical colony, the outline of which is delimited by many hundreds of branches, each of which has its own particular increment rate. The colony derived from a bacterial transplant or a frag-

ment of animal tissue likewise consists of hundreds of cells which behave as individuals. What we observe in measuring such a colony is the integrated behavior of many individuals in which whatever variations exist in the behavior of any one individual disappear in the final average for the colony. It is not at all certain that the individuals in such a colony have behaved alike. In following the behavior of a root culture, on the other hand, one is dealing with a single branch behaving as an individual, so that the full measure of variability is immediately evident. It is only by taking the average of a large number of such individual cultures that one can get a picture truly comparable to that of the single fungus, bacterial or fibroblast colony. Since it is patently impossible to deal with even hundreds of cultures at a time in absolutely uniform conditions of environment, the individual variability comes into unavoidable prominence.

Part of this variability doubtless arises as a result of slight and unrecognized differences in the environmental conditions to which individual flasks are subjected. Anyone who has studied, for example, the differences in atmospheric humidity in different parts of a single greenhouse bench knows how difficult it is to maintain uniform conditions even a few inches apart. Not all variables

are known. Such sources of error can be reduced by careful study but can never be completely eliminated.

Much of the variability, however, probably arises from differences in age, state of nutrition, degree of established dominance, extent of excision trauma, and similar characteristics of the separate explants. The effects of these differences can be greatly reduced by careful selection of the individual fragments used in each experiment. The importance of adequate uniform stocks from which to make this selection is thus obvious.

It is clear, for example, that, if a rapidly growing root culture containing one terminal growing point and 18 branches none of which has yet acquired an individual dominance is divided into 19 pieces each containing a single apical meristem, these pieces will be far from alike. The terminal meristem will be of much greater diameter than the others and of quite a different past history. It will suffer far less from the shock of excision, since its traumatized surface will be far less in proportion to its volume than for the laterals. It will recover more quickly and will show a much greater growth in the first few days after excision. Experience has shown that this difference can be somewhat reduced by cutting the main root above

and below each branch instead of severing the branch itself, in such a way that a "heel" of older tissue is left attached to each branch. The difference is still more reduced if only branches which have already acquired their full individuality or "dominance" are used. With tomato this dominance usually develops after the branch has reached a length of about 20 mm. If branches of this sort are severed, they will generally show no more retardation on excision than will apical meristems and can be considered comparable thereto. It is, therefore, advantageous in preparing a stock from which to select root tips, to have as high a proportion of well established branches as possible. Experience has shown that, if a piece of old tissue carrying several branch initials but from which the apex has been removed is cultured for a time, a considerable proportion of these initials will establish themselves with a comparable degree of dominance. Acquaintance with these facts has given rise to a standard experimental procedure.

Experience has shown that, in root cultures in flasks, satisfactorily reliable results cannot be counted on if a given experiment contains less than 20 replications under each experimental condition complex (see later). If, for example, it is desired to compare four sets of conditions among

one another and with a control, the experiment will require a minimum of 100 cultures. The routine procedure is as follows:

Ten rapidly growing, uniform cultures of clonal ancestry and each about 100 mm. long are selected. The terminal segment of each to a length of 3-4 mm. is removed and discarded. The remainder is divided into 10 to 15 mm. segments and each segment is placed in a flask of fresh nutrient and allowed to grow for a week. Each will develop from 3 or 4 to a dozen branches, and of these an average of 4 or 5 on each piece will have established comparable growth rates and full dominance. There should thus be available 300 or more uniform, well established root tips. These are carefully severed at a length of 10-15 mm. and from them 100 tips of as uniform character as possible are chosen for use in the actual experiment (Fig. 34). There is thus available a supply of tips which are all root apexes, of uniform size, age, nutrition, and degree of trauma, and which have all come from comparable root pieces of clonal relationship. The individual variability is thus reduced to a minimum. This does not mean that all cultures will behave exactly alike, even under as nearly like conditions as we are able to set up—there still remains a considerable residual variability that is as yet unexplained. But when a

sufficient number of replications is provided, the results can be counted on to be, under like conditions, similar from one test to another and, after properly correcting for regular seasonal differences (see later), they will give comparable results from year to year and from season to season.

The setting up of stocks for all cultures involves essentially the same procedure. The prime requisites are a considerably greater amount of available material than is at all likely to be needed so that a selection is possible, all material to be of clonal origin. Callus cultures grow much more slowly than do root cultures, so that a greater time, usually about a month, must be allowed between the setting up of stocks and their actual utilization.

*Inoculation.* The procedure in making inoculations is comparatively simple. The whole procedure is carried out in the transfer room. Stock cultures from which tips or callus fragments are to be taken are placed in a tray to the left of the operator. The instruments are in the sterilizing beaker or pan, in front of him (Fig. 30). Uninoculated flasks of nutrient are placed in trays to his right and a box for discarded caps stands at his left. The glass caps are removed from both sets of flasks. A flask containing a stock culture is grasped in the left hand, tilted to reduce the

horizontal exposure of the opening, and the cotton plug is removed with the little finger and heel of the right hand and retained. The operating scissors or scalpel is taken out of the boiling water with the right hand, and all satisfactory appearing root tips or callus fragments on the stock culture are severed and a mental note made of their number. The plug is replaced, the scissors returned to the boiling water, and the flask returned to the tray. Root pieces longer than 15 mm. become difficult to pick up. Pieces shorter than 10 mm. are likely to suffer considerable shock from excision and to respond poorly after transfer. While fragments as small as 0.1 mm. in length *have* been grown successfully (White, 1932, 89), experience has shown that those from 10 to 15 mm. long offer the most satisfactory balance between these various characteristics. The process of excision is repeated until all available tips have been severed. Since a mental note has been made of the total number of root tips severed and the number required for the experiment planned is known, it is then possible to judge how drastically the available pieces can be culled and still leave a sufficient number.

After all tips have been severed, the actual inoculation can be begun. A stock flask is grasped in the left hand and an uninoculated one is placed

on the table in front of the operator. The plug is removed from the first, and a sound, rapidly growing root tip is selected and picked up on a long chromel-wire loop. Usually two loops are employed alternately so that one is always in the sterilizing beaker while the other one is in use. The stock flask is plugged and set on the table, the uninoculated flask is taken up in the left hand, its plug removed with the right hand which still holds the transfer loop, and the culture fragment is inserted, the flask plugged and returned to its tray. The loop is returned to the boiling water and a fresh one taken up. The process is then repeated with another flask. In choosing tips for inoculation, it will be noted that occasionally a root which does not visibly differ from the others will nevertheless sink to the bottom of the flask instead of floating at the surface. Such tips should *not* be used, as experience has shown that they are regularly retarded in their development. Such retarded tips will sometimes recover completely, but they cannot be relied on to do so. What the cause of this condition is is not known, although it appears to be some obscure characteristic of the general "state of health" of the stock culture before excision.

The above description applies to the setting up of root cultures. The procedure for callus cul-



tures is similar except that, for dividing the tissue mass, a small, sharp scalpel gives better results than do the scissors.

*Growth.* Under ideal conditions, root cultures set up as described above will begin to grow almost immediately and will increase 3 to 4 mm. in length in the first 24 hours. (For methods of measuring growth, see later.) This increment rate accelerates up to about the 5th day when average rates of 10 to 15 mm. per day are common (occasional roots may grow as much as 80 mm. per day for single 24-hour periods), after which the growth rate again decreases rapidly (Fig. 43). This retardation indicates that the 5th or 6th day is the

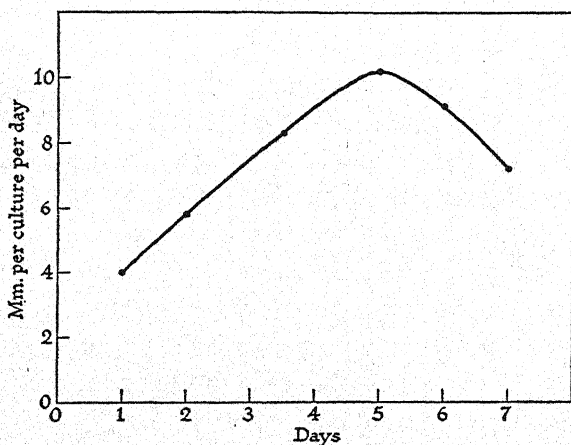


FIG. 43. Typical increment rates of tomato roots (average of 1000 cultures) on each day of a single one-week passage. The maximum increment rate is reached on the fifth day.

best time for subculturing. A one-week culture period has been chosen as best for routine work. The average growth rate throughout the year, of cultures grown in the laboratory without special temperature control, is about 7 to 8 mm. per culture per day, being greater than this in summer and less in winter (Fig. 26). Cultures begin to branch on about the 3rd day and may have as many as 30 branches by the end of a week. Some of the decrease in linear increment after the 5th day may be due to distribution of material into the branches instead of its concentration in a single axis. However, if, instead of using tips as inocula, non-apical segments bearing branch primordia such as are employed as stock cultures are used, the branches, although at first somewhat retarded, will when established increase at rates characteristic for the particular species and for the nutrient used, but independent of the *number* of branches developing on the culture. This behavior makes it clear that the rate of growth of a branch (and presumably of the main axis as well) is *not* determined by the number of branches present and that the retardation of growth rate after the 5th day is not entirely due to diversion of nutrient materials to newly formed branches.

While this laboratory has found a one-week culture period to be best adapted to the problems

under consideration here, Robbins and his colleagues have chosen a much longer period, usually from a month to two months. This has certain definite advantages as well as disadvantages. Robbins uses dry-weight as a measure of growth. By this method cultures are examined only at the end of the passage, when they must be sacrificed (see later). A two-month period thus requires only an eighth as much work as do eight one-week periods. The long period permits tissues to mature and might, in theory, give time for morphological changes to become evident that would never appear in cultures maintained for repeated short periods. (Compare Parker, 1936, 428, 429; Fischer u. Parker, 1929, 411.) It permits the accumulation of large masses of tissue so that the percentage differential between the final size in two different nutrients may be much greater than after a shorter period. These appear to be advantages. On the other hand, the long period permits the study of far fewer cultures in a given space of time, tying up both laboratory space and glassware. Contrary to expectation, morphological changes which might be anticipated have not actually appeared. Moreover, the large masses of tissue accumulated in a long period may be largely inert carbohydrate—cell-wall materials, starch, etc. There is some evidence that such cul-

tures may be built up by a recurrent cyclic reutilization of materials leached out of the older inactive or even dead tissues. The increment figures obtained at the end of a long period may thus give no true measure of the *level* of metabolic activity of the tissue involved. It is doubtful whether the advantages of a long culture period are not greatly outweighed by its disadvantages.

*Culture conditions required.* The requisite characteristics of the nutrient have been discussed elsewhere. Cultures are apparently for the most part relatively insensitive to light and can be placed either in darkness or in diffuse light (Robbins and Maneval, 1924, 258; White, 1932, 63, 1937, 265; Malyshev, 1932, 53, 54; Gautheret, 1935, 15). They should never be exposed for long periods to direct light as they are extremely sensitive to high temperature and to temperature changes and could easily become overheated (White, 1932, 63, 1937, 265). It is highly desirable to have the temperature of the culture chamber and transfer room rather accurately controlled. Root tips of wheat have an optimum temperature of about 27° (White, 1932, 63), tomato nearer 30° (White, 1937, 265). The range between optimum and maximum is, however, very narrow and a 5° rise above these temperatures, if maintained for

very long, will kill the cultures (Fig. 44). It is because of this extreme sensitivity to *high* temperatures that cultures, when maintained at "room temperature," fluctuate so much more widely in growth rate in summer than in winter. Cultures will, on the other hand, endure low temperatures—down to  $+5^{\circ}$  C.—for long periods

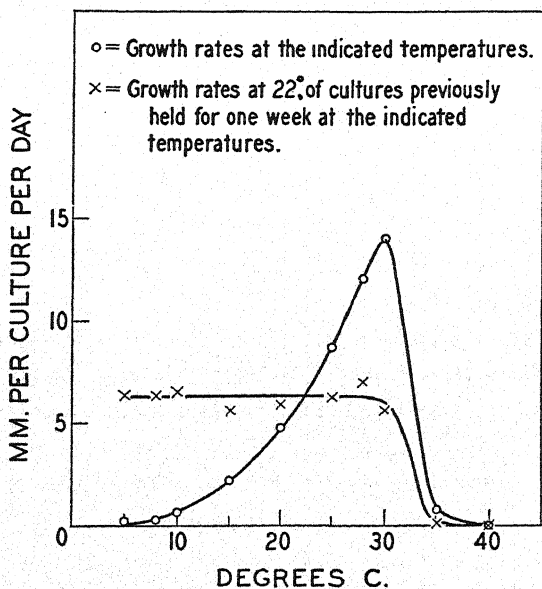


FIG. 44. Average increment rates of isolated tomato roots maintained for one week at a series of controlled temperatures ranging from  $5^{\circ}$  to  $40^{\circ}$  C. (open circles) and then all transferred for a second week (crosses) to a temperature of about  $22^{\circ}$  C. All except those maintained at  $35^{\circ}$  and  $40^{\circ}$  show an immediate reversion to the growth rate typical for  $22^{\circ}$ . (From White, P. R. 1937. *Plant Physiol.* 12: 773, fig. 1, 266.)

without apparent injury and, while growing very slowly at such temperatures, will resume a normal growth rate within a few days when removed to higher temperatures (White, 1937, 266). Aside from these two requirements, of maintained temperature level and protection from direct insolation, together with protection from traces of gases or volatile materials, the environmental requirements of plant tissue cultures are not especially exacting.

Flask cultures of the type described above have great flexibility and permit considerable freedom of manipulation. They can be handled easily and do not readily become contaminated. They do, however, occupy a good deal of space, the nutrient evaporates rapidly with consequent alteration in its solute concentration so that the cultures must be transferred at frequent intervals, and they require large volumes of nutrient. Conditions may sometimes arise under which these objectionable factors outweigh the difficulties of manipulation in small space so that it is desirable to grow cultures in test tubes, either on agar or in liquid nutrient. The size of the tube to be used will depend on the requirements of the particular experiment. Gey uses a special  $15 \times 100$  mm. tube for "roller tube" cultivation of animal tissue cultures (Gey, 1933, 129; Gey and Gey, 1936, 130). This method has

not been tried with plant tissue cultures but deserves attention. Lewis uses ordinary  $15 \times 150$  mm. test tubes for the same purpose (Lewis, 1935, 419). Callus cultures have sometimes been grown in 2 ml. of nutrient in  $12 \times 100$  mm. serum tubes, but such cultures must, of course, be removed from the tubes for any kind of manipulation, even for division in order to make transfers. Tubes  $25 \times 150$  mm. without lip and charged with 10 ml. of nutrient, have proved to be a fairly satisfactory compromise between the advantages and disadvantages of the test tube and the Erlenmeyer flask. They are shallow enough and have wide enough mouths that considerable dissection and other manipulation can be practiced on the cultures without removing them from the tube. The liquid surface is still small enough in proportion to the volume to reduce evaporation to a considerable extent, yet the depth of liquid is small enough to permit some degree of aeration without special precautions. Such tubes are especially well adapted for routine callus cultures on agar. Root cultures in tubes must be watched to see that the tips do not turn upward when the culture reaches a length greater than the diameter of the tube. Otherwise, with continued growth the tip may be forced out into the air where it will no longer grow satisfactorily.

Flask cultures and tube cultures are suitable for experiments in which gross increase and habit of growth are the features of chief interest and in which, when further details are required, they can be obtained by removing the cultures from the original containers where, for example, they are to be fixed and sectioned. These are, in general, characteristics of the initial phases in the development of any field of investigation. But these methods do not permit the observer to follow the behavior of individual cells except under conditions which entail a more or less serious disruption of the continuity of growth. Plant tissue cells do not migrate along a solid substratum (Chambers, 1923, 43; Pfeiffer, 1933, 450; Scheitterer, 1931, 109, and Gautheret, 1937, 282, notwithstanding), since the cellulose pellicle interferes with the adhesive qualities of the cells. It is, therefore, not possible to use flasks of the Carrel-flask type for microscopic examination under growing conditions. For this purpose, hanging-drop cultures (see Parker, 1938, 26), in spite of numerous objectionable characteristics, appear to be best. This type of culture is second only to the flask type in importance in carrying out plant tissue cultures.

In the typical hanging-drop culture a drop of nutrient, either liquid or semi-solid, is placed on a cover glass, the cover is inverted over some form



of depression slide so as to seal the drop into a chamber which will reduce evaporation from the drop, and the culture is then incubated. This technique permits many modifications which have been described in more or less detail in other manuals of microbiological methods.

*Slides.* A variety of slides have been developed for use with hanging drops (Fig. 42). The simplest of these are the hollow ground slides used by the protozoölogists. The curvature of these depressions provides only a very poor optical medium through which to illuminate cultures for observation by transmitted light. Slides with a deep hot-pressed well with "flat" bottom instead of the ground depression are somewhat better in this respect. Low "Van Tiegham" rings of glass, or the brass rings used by Dr. and Mrs. Warren Lewis (Parker, 1938, 26), cemented to ordinary flat slides, provide still better optical properties but are somewhat clumsy to handle. The pierced slide described in Chapter IV (Fig. 27), in spite of its fragility, offers the best, most easily handled, most widely useful type of slide for hanging-drop cultures. While the optical properties of this slide are excellent, the curvature of the surface of the drop may cause some trouble. This can be obviated by floating a  $5 \times 5$  mm. sq. piece of No. 0 cover on the surface of the drop over the culture.

Capillary forces will hold this piece firmly in place while the 2.5 mm. distance from center to margin will still permit a free interchange of gases between the liquid and the air in the chamber.

*Cover glasses.* Standard No. 1 cover glasses are usually used for hanging-drop cultures. These should be thoroughly cleaned, preferably in cleaning solution, rinsed, dipped in a 50-50 ether-absolute alcohol mixture which is then burned off, and stacked for use in a wire rack. Covers of mica are frequently employed, but their optical properties are seldom satisfactory and they sometimes contain soluble impurities which may be injurious. All covers now available have objectionable features. Cover glasses are usually made of "soft" glass, are quite soluble, and tend to rapidly alkalinize the nutrient drop. In animal tissue cultures, where the optimal pH is about 7.6 and where the tendency of the tissue metabolism is to render the solution more acid, this alkalinizing tendency of soft glass is not objectionable—especially as animal tissue culture media are mostly highly buffered. But with plant cultures which are made in unbuffered solutions having an optimal pH of about 5.4, and in which a reaction above 6.0 may be very injurious, this tendency may be quite serious in its effects. Pyrex covers, if available, would obviate this difficulty, but these

have not yet been successfully manufactured. Quartz covers are much too expensive for routine work. Some progress has been made towards solving this problem by dipping glass covers in chemically and physiologically inert plastics such as ethyl-methacrylate (du Pont), "Clarite," etc. This method has given considerable promise, but a reliable technique for obtaining duplicable results has not yet been perfected. At present, this seems, however, to be the best lead.

*Methods.* Hanging-drop cultures, of course, require very minute amounts of both tissues and nutrients. Methods for their preparation are described in great detail in Parker's (1938, 26) recent handbook. The nutrients can be sterilized in either small flasks or test tubes. Sterile pipettes with sterile rubber bulbs must be provided. The material to be cultured is cut up into pieces of the required size—root tips 0.5 mm. or less in length (Chambers, 1923, 43, 1924, 44; White, 1932, 89), bits of callus, intercalary meristems (Scheittrer, 1931, 109), seed primordia (White, 1932, 89), small bud centers (White, 1933, 116), etc.—and is placed in sterile nutrient in watch glasses which will be set at the operator's left. Instruments, covers, and slides are placed in front. The slides are first prepared with a small drop of vaseline on each side of the depression

or hole. A clean cover is grasped between the thumb and middle finger of the left hand (the form of the rack used facilitates this) and, while it is held horizontal, a drop of nutrient solution is placed on the middle of the cover. This is spread around in a uniform thin layer about 8 mm. in diameter. The fragment of tissue is then placed in the center of the drop, the cover is inverted with a quick, smooth motion so as not to throw off the drop of liquid, and is pressed down over the depression of a slide. The slide is set to the operator's right and the process repeated. After a sufficient series is completed, the covers are ringed with hot paraffin or vaseline, using a small brush, so as to seal them. They are then ready for observation or incubation.

Hanging-drop cultures should be transferred to fresh nutrient at least every 3rd or 4th day. If regular depression slides are used, this will necessitate removing the cover carrying the culture, a process which requires great care (Parker, 1938, 26). If special pierced slides are used, it is only necessary to slip out the *lower* cover, draw off the nutrient with a clean pipette, replace it with a fresh drop, and insert a clean cover in place of the one removed.

## SUMMARY

Cultures are maintained either in flasks, tubes, or hanging drops. Most of the preliminary studies, particularly on problems of nutrition, have been carried out in Erlenmeyer flasks. These are large enough to permit a good deal of manipulation of cultures and to provide a large volume of nutrient which is only slowly altered by the metabolism of the tissues. Test tubes require much less space and nutrient but permit only a very limited amount of manipulation. Neither method permits microscopic examination of cultures. A technique for such examination is provided in the various sorts of hanging-drop cultures which are important for this reason, although they require much more work and do not provide the stable nutrient conditions necessary for satisfactory study of nutritional problems. Since each of these three techniques has its own special advantages for particular types of problem, the best technique for any given problem will have to be chosen with these characteristics in mind.

## CHAPTER VIII

### GROWTH MEASUREMENTS AND THEIR INTERPRETATION

The chief aims of plant tissue cultures are, of course, first, the setting up of a group of conditions which shall adequately duplicate those under which the organ, tissue, or cell lives in nature, in such a manner that its behavior therein is quantitatively and qualitatively "normal," that is similar to what it would have been in its native environment; and, second, the study of the quantitative and qualitative changes which take place in its behavior when single elements of these conditions are altered. This gives us a measure of the importance and function of each characteristic of the environment in the economy of the organ, tissue, or cell under investigation, permits us to sort out the significant from the merely fortuitous elements of behavior, thus simplifying our picture of the real organism, and should lead to a better understanding of behavior itself.

Qualitative differences cannot easily be represented except by descriptive—hence subjective—means. These must inevitably fall short of the

ideal requirements of scientific presentation. True science rests upon quantitative representations. And quantitative changes can be precisely represented in terms of measurements. It is thus natural that *measurement* should play a dominant role in tissue culture studies and that the accuracy and reliability of measurement should be a major concern of the student of this subject.

Living organisms, particularly those which, like most plant materials, are incapable of autonomous movement, give evidence of their reactions to changes in environment chiefly by changes in character or velocity of *growth*. And growth comes into evidence chiefly through increase either in mass or in complexity of some one or more parts of the living material or its products. Increase can be measured in a variety of ways, depending on the nature of the material to be measured.

*Methods.* We are, of course, primarily interested in tissue cultures because they are living materials. Increase of living material, as distinct from non-living secretions, is therefore of the greatest importance. These living materials are chiefly proteins. The carbohydrates and fats and the nitrogenous materials of non-protein character are largely constituents which *can* be removed without destroying the organism's capacity to live. This is also true of *some* of the

proteins themselves, but, if we set aside all constituents of an organism except protein and follow the increase or decrease in this one constituent, we have about as good a measure of the increase or decrease in living substance under a given set of conditions as is at present available. This can be done by aliquot determinations of non-soluble amino-nitrogen. Mueller recognized this when he chose this criterion as the only acceptable one in the measurement of growth of diphtheria bacilli under the influence of different nutrient complexes (Mueller, 1935, 176).

The actual measurement of amino-nitrogen, while slow and tedious, is not especially difficult. It could be applied to tissue culture practice as a routine procedure, if desired. It has, however, one very serious drawback which, together with its tediousness, has prevented its coming into common practice. This is the fact that it requires the destruction of the material measured. In studying living, growing organisms, this is a serious drawback, since it prevents the making of subcultures from examples which prove to be especially favorable. The best that can be done is to make such measurements on a series of aliquots, using sufficient numbers so that the results will truly represent the characteristics of the whole series. This method easily becomes cumbersome or unreliable, or both.



Increase in protein nitrogen is the *best* measure of increase in living material available. Increase in carbohydrate may also give a measure of the activity of the protoplasm. It is, however, a cumulative or catalytic process, since any given unit of protoplasm may produce 1 or 10 or 100 units of carbohydrate without itself necessarily either increasing or decreasing in amount. Estimation of dry weight has been frequently used as a measure of increase of the *total* material in a culture. If samples for such determination are taken when the cultures are growing actively, this may give a fairly accurate indication of protoplasmic activity. But, if they are taken in what we term the "differentiating" stage in development, there may easily be a rapid increase in dry weight along with an actual decrease in living material. Dry weight determinations are tedious and time-consuming, although less so than amino-nitrogen determinations. They can be made with a fair degree of accuracy, the error in good hands probably amounting to about 5 per cent plus or minus the true value. This method of recording increase has been used in plant tissue culture studies to some extent, especially by Robbins and his colleagues (Robbins, 1922, 57, 177; Robbins and Maneval, 1923, 59, 1924, 258; Robbins and Bartley, 1937, 170, 222, 223; Robbins and Schmidt, 1938,

60, 1939, 61, 224), by Gautheret (1939, 285) and by Malyshev (1932, 53, 54). Like amino-nitrogen determinations, however, it involves destruction of the specimens studied, discontinuity of observations, and the use of aliquots.

There is, however, a third method which does not involve destruction of the tissue, permits consecutive measurements, and in practiced hands is at least as accurate as is the measurement of dry weights. That is the measurement of area increases. In studying animal tissue cultures, it has long been the practice to project the image of a culture on paper at hourly, daily, or weekly intervals, making tracings of the outline, to measure the areas of these tracings with a planimeter, and from the results to construct curves representing the growth increments (Ebeling, 1921, 456; Parker, 1938, 26). It is recognized that this method may err in making no distinction between cell migration and cell increase and in taking no account of changes in thickness of the cultures. The first objection does not apply to the use of this method for plant cultures, since no migration takes place from plant tissues. The second objection is valid when the areas of callus cultures are under investigation, since these ordinarily develop as somewhat flattened hemispheres of tissue.

When applied to root cultures, however, a modi-

fication of this method, using linear rather than area increments as a criterion of growth, has furnished the most generally satisfactory measure of increase yet devised. When grown in culture, roots do not undergo secondary thickening (White, 1934, 65). As a result, they ordinarily take up a diameter characteristic of the species and of the culture medium within a very few millimeters of the growing point and retain this diameter throughout the length of even very old cultures (White, 1932, 63, 1933, 64, 141, 1934, 65). The cross sectional area is thus a constant and can be ignored in comparing measurements, so that length alone becomes an accurate measure of volume and weight. Fiedler (1936, 45) has verified the fact that the weights and linear increments of root cultures bear a constant relation to one another, by parallel measurements and weighings of a series of cultures of different length. This statement, of course, does not apply to branches at the time of or shortly after their initiation (these always have a smaller diameter than do fully established roots), but it is a well established fact that once a branch has acquired its full individuality or "dominance" (discussed elsewhere) it acquires this characteristic diameter. Measurements which record only the linear increment of the central axis will thus give an accurate record

of the increase, so long as the culture does not branch. If the branches formed are ignored, this measurement will then be somewhat *below* the true value as measured by dry-weight or amino-nitrogen methods, but will never, on the average, exceed the true value. It will be in error in proportion to the number and importance of the branches present. Since normally growing roots seldom produce branches in great number or of great length, the error introduced in this way will seldom be great. Thus, for example, one series of 20 cultures studied in June, 1939, in the control nutrient, had a total linear increment of the main axes of 7449 mm. in a week's time. There were 492 branches (an unusually large number) with a total length of 2804 mm. Since the cross sectional area of the branches would average about one-fifth that of the main axes, the ratio *volume of branches : volume of main axes* would be about  $\frac{2804}{5} : 7450 = \frac{560}{7450} = 1:13 = 7.5\%$ . Ignoring the branches thus introduces an error of -7.5 per cent into the record. Similarly, an experimental series in which potassium was omitted from the nutrient (April, 1939) gave a linear axial increment of 1654 mm., an increment in branches of 214 mm., and an error of  $\frac{214}{5} : 1654 = \frac{43}{1654} = 1:38 = 2.6\%$ . An error of -2.6 per cent is less than that likely to be intro-

duced into dry weight measurements by hygroscopic absorption of moisture and is less than errors likely to arise from inaccuracies of measurements (see below), so that it is not important. Moreover, this error is *always* a negative one, the measurements will (aside from errors of manipulation) always be minimal ones, with the result that every experiment recorded in this way is slightly weighted against the experimenter. This has thus furnished a very satisfactory criterion of growth.

The usefulness of any method depends, of course, largely on its simplicity, accuracy, and degree of reliability. The method used in making measurements is extremely simple (Fig. 40). The flask containing the culture to be measured is held in the left hand. A flexible celluloid rule is used to make the measurement. If the culture is very short (under 30 mm.), it can be caused to float against the glass so that both ends touch and the ruler is laid alongside. For cultures more than 30 mm. long, particularly if they have curved greatly, it is best to place the rule *below* the flask and bend it to approximate the curve of the root. One must be careful to look through the glass downward (parallel to the straight component of the sides) rather than sidewise (radially to the curved component) so that the curvatures will not

distort and enlarge the apparent image. By this method, measurements can be made with surprising accuracy. The accuracy of measurement has been determined in two ways. In the first place, a series of 10 roots varying in length from 18 to 110 mm. was measured. The flasks were shuffled so that the order of measurements was changed. The roots were remeasured and the process repeated seven times. The measurements were then subjected to statistical analysis. The results are shown in Table 2. They indicate that measurements made by an observer on a single set of roots will vary from measurement to measurement by somewhat less than 2 per cent but give no indication of the deviation from the true length.

In the second place, a series of 20 cultures was measured in the routine way by two different observers and the results recorded. The roots were then removed from the nutrient, placed in a vessel of water, and stretched out along a ruler in such a way that an accurate measure of the true length could be obtained. These last measurements were then compared with the measurements of the two observers made by the standard method, giving a basis for expressing the average *error* of the method in the hands of these observers. (Observer A was an experienced worker; observer B

TABLE 2

| Root No.   | 1    | 2    | 3    | 4    | 5    | 6    | 7    | 8    | 9     | 10    |
|------------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|-------|-------|
|            | 18   | 20   | 20   | 38   | 44   | 48   | 92   | 95   | 104*  | 108   |
|            | 18   | 20   | 21   | 38   | 43   | 49   | 93   | 95   | 113   | 110   |
|            | 18   | 20   | 21   | 39   | 43   | 48   | 92   | 96   | 114   | 104   |
| mm. ....   | 18   | 21   | 21   | 40   | 43   | 52   | 93   | 96   | 117   | 105   |
|            | 18   | 20   | 21   | 40   | 43   | 51   | 92   | 95   | 114   | 107   |
|            | 18   | 20   | 21   | 38   | 45   | 49   | 92   | 95   | 113   | 106   |
|            | 18   | 20   | 21   | 38   | 45   | 50   | 94   | 96   | 113   | 107   |
| mean ..... | 18.0 | 20.1 | 20.9 | 38.6 | 43.8 | 49.8 | 92.8 | 95.5 | 112.8 | 106.5 |
| ± .....    | 0.00 | 0.03 | 0.03 | 3.3  | 1.0  | 1.5  | 0.3  | 0.5  | 3.7   | 0.6   |

Average length ..... 59.9  
 Average deviation ..... ± 1.1  
 \* Scale probably incorrectly read. This should probably have been "114," instead of "104."

Average deviation is ± 1.8% of the average length.

had much less experience with the method.) The results were:

| Root No.                          | True length mm. | A's measurements | B's measurements | A's error | B's error |
|-----------------------------------|-----------------|------------------|------------------|-----------|-----------|
| 1                                 | 129             | 135              | 115              | + 6       | -14       |
| 2                                 | 158             | 165              | 135              | + 7       | -23       |
| 3                                 | 37              | 38               | 28               | + 1       | - 9       |
| 4                                 | 175             | 188              | 150              | +13       | -25       |
| 5                                 | 140             | 144              | 130              | + 4       | -10       |
| 6                                 | 58              | 58               | 56               | 0         | - 2       |
| 7                                 | 71              | 75               | 68               | + 4       | - 3       |
| 8                                 | 173             | 182              | 150              | + 9       | -23       |
| 9                                 | 178             | 184              | 165              | + 6       | -13       |
| 10                                | 162             | 170              | 135              | + 8       | -32       |
| 11                                | 161             | 172              | 145              | +11       | -16       |
| 12                                | 162             | 174              | 150              | +12       | -12       |
| 13                                | 147             | 157              | 130              | +10       | -17       |
| 14                                | 156             | 167              | 137              | +11       | -19       |
| 15                                | 154             | 170              | 150              | +16       | - 4       |
| 16                                | 170             | 182              | 160              | +12       | -10       |
| 17                                | 168             | 180              | 150              | +12       | -18       |
| 18                                | 66              | 70               | 70               | + 4       | - 4       |
| 19                                | 114             | 118              | 115              | + 4       | - 1       |
| 20                                | 141             | 148              | 122              | + 7       | -19       |
| Average                           | 131             | 144              | 123              | + 7.9     | -13.3     |
| Error as per cent of true value = |                 |                  |                  | + 6.0     | -10.2     |

In this series the experienced observer tended to overestimate the length of cultures by about 6 per cent, which is just about enough to compensate for the systematic error of -7.5 per cent due to the presence of unmeasured branches (see above), while the less experienced observer tended to underestimate the lengths by a considerably greater margin. In experienced hands, this method will give results of an accuracy and relia-



bility very nearly equal to that obtainable in making dry weight determinations and has the great advantage that it can be practiced rapidly and without removing the cultures from their flasks. Repeated measurements can be made on each growing culture at any desired interval, growth curves can be set up, and subcultures can be made from those roots which show, over an extended period, any desired type of behavior.

*Replications.* As we have already seen, root and callus cultures, since they are biological materials, show a considerable degree of variability. In the series presented in the last table, the lengths at the end of a week in the control nutrient varied between 37 and 178 mm., with an average of 131 mm. This is fairly typical of root cultures. It is obvious that materials of this degree of variability cannot be treated as individuals but must be treated statistically. This being the case, it is important to decide first how many replications are necessary in order that significant results can be obtained and, second, how wide a difference must a given experimental variable produce in a series of the chosen number of cultures before that effect can be considered as being due to this variable and not to chance. Decision on the first point involves a compromise between the ideal of an infinite number on which to base averages and the

number which can be practicably handled in a laboratory with restricted space and facilities and limited time. This laboratory has chosen 20 as the standard number of cultures used in setting up averages, and each experiment is generally repeated several times. The second point can be settled by a statistical analysis of actual results using this standard number. Some examples are given in Table 3.

In this group of experiments, in each of which 20 cultures grown under one set of conditions are compared with 20 cultures grown either under a different set of conditions or else under the same conditions but on different dates, differences up to 12 per cent between the two series (Nos. 1, 2, 3, 4, and 10) are without statistical significance; differences of 24 and 25 per cent (Nos. 5 and 8) are of doubtful significance (odds of less than 20:1 against the results being due to chance); while differences of 31 per cent and over (Nos. 6, 7, and 9) are highly significant (odds of more than 20:1 against the results being due to chance). This analysis indicates that in experiments carried out in this way and using 20 replications in each experimental complex differences of 30 per cent and over can, in general, be relied on to indicate a true difference in behavior and not merely fortuitous differences due to the variability of the

TABLE 3

| No. | Series  |  | Mean total increments<br>in mm. |            | Difference<br>I minus II | Diff. =<br>% of I | t*   | Odds in favor<br>of difference<br>being sig-<br>nificant |
|-----|---|--|---------------------------------|------------|--------------------------|-------------------|------|--|
|     | I   | II   | I                               | II         |                          |                   |      |  |
| 1   | Yeast<br>June 7-14, 1938                                      | Yeast<br>June 9-16, 1938                                       | 77.7 ± 6.1                      | 71.4 ± 6.1 | 6.4 ± 8.7                | 8                 | 0.74 | nil  |
| 2   | Yeast<br>June 9-16, 1938                                      | Yeast<br>June 19-26, 1939                                      | 71.4 ± 6.1                      | 68.2 ± 6.6 | 3.2 ± 9.1                | 4                 | 0.35 | "  |
| 3   | Yeast<br>June 7-14, 1938                                      | Glycine + 10 <sup>-7</sup> B <sub>1</sub><br>June 9-16, 1938   | 77.7 ± 6.1                      | 79.7 ± 8.8 | - 2.0 ± 10.7             | 3                 | 0.19 | "  |
| 4   | Yeast<br>June 9-16, 1938                                      | Glycine + 10 <sup>-7</sup> B <sub>1</sub><br>June 9-16, 1938   | 71.4 ± 6.1                      | 79.7 ± 8.8 | - 8.3 ± 10.7             | 12                | 0.78 | "  |
| 5   | Yeast<br>Jan. 19-26, 1939                                     | Glycine + 10 <sup>-8</sup> B <sub>1</sub><br>Jan. 19-26, 1939  | 68.2 ± 6.6                      | 51.6 ± 6.0 | 16.6 ± 8.6               | 24                | 1.93 | < 20: 1  |
| 6   | Yeast<br>Jan. 19-26, 1939                                     | Glycine + 10 <sup>-10</sup> B <sub>1</sub><br>Jan. 19-26, 1939 | 68.2 ± 6.6                      | 47.2 ± 4.2 | 21.0 ± 7.8               | 31                | 2.69 | > 20: 1  |
| 7   | Yeast<br>June 9-16, 1938                                      | 10 <sup>-7</sup> B <sub>1</sub><br>June 9-16, 1938             | 71.4 ± 6.1                      | 34.0 ± 2.5 | 37.4 ± 6.7               | 52                | 5.58 | > 100: 1   |
| 8   | 10 <sup>-7</sup> thiamin (B <sub>1</sub> )<br>June 9-16, 1938 | 10 <sup>-7</sup> B <sub>1</sub><br>Jan. 19-26, 1939            | 34.0 ± 2.5                      | 44.8 ± 3.7 | - 10.8 ± 4.5             | 25                | 2.40 | < 20: 1  |
| 9   | Glycine + 10 <sup>-7</sup> B <sub>1</sub><br>June 9-16, 1938  | 10 <sup>-7</sup> B <sub>1</sub><br>June 9-16, 1938             | 79.7 ± 8.8                      | 34.0 ± 2.5 | 45.7 ± 9.2               | 58                | 4.97 | > 100: 1   |
| 10  | Glycine + 10 <sup>-7</sup> B <sub>1</sub><br>June 9-16, 1938  | Glycine + 10 <sup>-7</sup> B <sub>1</sub><br>Jan. 19-26, 1939  | 79.7 ± 8.8                      | 82.3 ± 7.7 | - 2.6 ± 11.2             | 3                 | 0.23 | nil  |

\*t = ratio of mean difference to the standard deviation of the mean difference.

material. This, then, has been used as a basis in interpreting results of experiments of this sort.

*Records.* Each worker will have his own preferences as to records, which he will adapt to his own particular problems. This laboratory's records, as regards root cultures, may be worth presenting. All records are kept in  $5 \times 7\frac{1}{2}$ " notebooks containing about 120 pages, cross-ruled at  $\frac{1}{5}$ " intervals. This book is of a size that will slip into a coat pocket (Fig. 41). The rulings permit the organization of the page into both horizontal and vertical columns and are close enough together so that a great deal of information can be placed on a single page. Three sample pages will suffice to indicate the ways in which such pages can be organized. The three sample pages indicate clearly the way in which routine numerical records are kept. In addition, photographs are taken of typical roots in each important experiment chosen to represent as nearly as possible the average length and growth habit of those grown in each solution or environmental complex. Thus, in Example 2, root No. 136 was set aside for photographing since it most nearly approximated the average of the group. The actual figures were:

Average increment = 24.8 mm.

No. 136 =  $42 - 18 = 24$  mm.

|                                  |         |
|----------------------------------|---------|
| Average number of branches       | = 2.3   |
| No. 136                          | = 2     |
| Average length of longest branch | = 5 mm. |
| No. 136                          | = 5 mm. |

From these records and from any qualitative notes which may be taken, a picture of the effects of any particular experimental variable can be built up.

*Presentation of results.* It is seldom if ever necessary or desirable to present the numerical data in an experiment *in toto*. The results can usually be presented better in the form of either histograms where only average results for total passages are desired or curves where temporal trends are to be given. Where a number of simultaneous experiments are to be compared, the results can be presented in absolute units—mm. or mg. or per cent nitrogen. Where experiments carried out on different tissues or at different times, particularly at different times of year, are to be compared, this is not possible, since the effects of varietal differences or of uncontrolled seasonal variables in the environment may have as great or greater effects on growth rates than do the experimental variables. Since all cultures react on the average in approximately the same way and to the same extent to most variables in the environment, this difficulty can be obviated by setting up a control in each series, treating this control always as the norm, and comparing all

## EXAMPLE 1

| Passage 326 |               |         |               | Stock cultures |              |        |               | Passage 327 |  | 51  |
|-------------|---------------|---------|---------------|----------------|--------------|--------|---------------|-------------|--|-----|
|             |               |         |               | 1939           |              |        |               |             |  |     |
| No.         | Derived from* | July 25 | August 1      | No.            | Derived from | Aug. 1 | August 8      |             |  |     |
| 1           | 1             | 15†     | 68 + 9 - 13‡  | 53§            | 1            | 17     | 85 + 6 - 18   |             |  | 68  |
| 2           | 2             | 16      | 90 + 11 - 6   | 74             | 2            | 18     | 83 + 4 - 10   |             |  | 65  |
| 3           | "             | 16      | 53 + 5        | 37             | 3            | 16     | M             |             |  | 0   |
| 4           | 4             | 19      | 108 + 19 - 30 | 89             | 4            | 19     | 90 + 11 - 16  |             |  | 71  |
| 5           | 5             | 17      | 134 + 24 - 8  | 117            | 5            | 17     | 85 + 10 - 8   |             |  | 68  |
| 6           | "             | 16      | 105 + 15 - 9  | 89             | 6            | 17     | 105 + 20 - 5  |             |  | 88  |
| 7           | 8             | 17      | 25 + 6 - 60   | 60             | 7            | 16     | 50 + 6 - 37   |             |  | 37  |
| 8           | 9             | 18      | 66 + 8 - 52   | 52             | 8            | 15     | 75 + 10 - 18  |             |  | 60  |
| 9           | 10            | 16      | 98 + 15 - 8   | 82             | 9            | 15     | 52 + 7 - 32   |             |  | 37  |
| 10          | "             | 19      | 127 + 20 - 13 | 108            | 10           | 14     | 45 + 3 - 10   |             |  | 31  |
| 11          | 11            | 17      | 95 + 13 - 23  | 78             | 11           | 16     | 115 + 16 - 7  |             |  | 99  |
| 12          | 12            | 16      | 85 + 3 - 7    | 69             | 12           | 17     | 95 + 2 - 5    |             |  | 78  |
| 13          | "             | 16      | 110 + 16 - 12 | 94             | 13           | 16     | 70 M          |             |  | 54  |
| 14          | "             | 14      | 85 + 10 - 8   | 71             | 14           | 16     | 67 + 6 - 25   |             |  | 51  |
| 15          | "             | 15      | 88 + 6 - 3    | 73             | 15           | 18     | 51 + 4 - 15M  |             |  | 33  |
| 16          | 14            | 18      | 115 + 24 - 11 | 97             | 16           | 18     | 136 + 20 - 20 |             |  | 118 |
| 17          | 16            | 18      | 108 + 27 - 8  | 90             | 17           | 11     | 86 + 20 - 16  |             |  | 71  |
| 18          | 18            | 17      | 50 + 7 - 14   | 33             | 18           | 12     | 110 + 10 - 5  |             |  | 91  |
| 19          | 19            | 16      | + 5 - 43      | 43             | 19           | 13     | 145 + 12 - 20 |             |  | 122 |
| 20          | 20            | 16      | 33 + 4 - 7    | 17             | 20           | 14     | 129 + 20 - 16 |             |  | 110 |
| 21          | "             | 15      | 33 + 5 - 10   | 18             | 21           | 15     | 132 + 22 - 19 |             |  | 114 |
| 22          | 21            | 17      | 87 + 9 - 26   | 70             | 22           | 16     | 75 + 15 - 20  |             |  | 58  |
| 23          | 22            | 17      | 20 S          | 3              | 23           | 17     | 65            |             |  | 47  |
| 24          | 23            | 17      | 72 + 10 - 29  | 55             | 24           | 19     | 75 + 8 - 22   |             |  | 58  |
| 25          | 24            | 16      | 107 + 8 - 6   | 91             | 25           | 22     | 87 + 15 - 17  |             |  | 20  |

Total increment = 1663 mm.

Mean incr./cult./day = 9.5 mm.

1704 mm.

9.7 mm.

Notes:

\* A record is kept of the genealogy of each culture. Thus, Nos. 2 and 3 of passage 326 were derived from No. 2 of passage 325, Nos. 11, 12, 13, and 14 of passage 327 were taken as tips of branches of No. 8 of passage 326, etc. Thus, the history of any culture can be traced at will.

† The length of each culture is recorded as soon after transfer as possible.

‡ At the end of the passage (one week), the length of the main axis, the number of branches, and the length of the longest branch are recorded. Thus, 68 + 9 - 13 means that the culture had attained a total length of 68 mm. and had formed 9 branches the longest of which was 13 mm. long. 53 + 5 indicates a total length of 53 mm. with only a single branch 5 mm. long. + 5 - 43 indicates that the main axis had not grown at all but that there were 5 branches the longest of which was 43 mm. long. In this case the length of the longest branch is used in calculating increments.

§ These figures represent the increase during a week's growth, that is, the difference between 15 mm. initial length and 68 mm. final length.

|| "M" indicates contamination with mold, "B" contamination with bacteria, and "S" indicates that the culture had sunk to the bottom of the flask.



## EXAMPLE 3

25

Root-pressures balanced against compressed air of measured pressure values

Set up June 15, 1937

| Date    | Days | Time  | Hours  | Height | Remarks                  |
|---------|------|-------|--------|--------|--------------------------|
| June 15 | 0    | 14:00 | 0      | 75     |                          |
|         |      | 16:00 | 2'     | 75     |                          |
| 16      | 1    | 8:30  | 18'30" | 100    |                          |
|         |      | 12:00 | 22'    | 106    |                          |
|         |      | 16:00 | 26'    | 117    | 1 atm. pressure applied  |
|         |      | 16:10 | 26'10" | 120    | 2 " " "                  |
|         |      | 16:40 | 26'40" | 120    |                          |
| 17      | 2    | 8:30  | 42'30" | 148    | 3 " " "                  |
|         |      | 11:00 | 45'    | 164    | 4 " " "                  |
|         |      | 12:00 | 46'    | 164    |                          |
|         |      | 13:30 | 47'30" | 176    | 5 " " "                  |
|         |      | 15:30 | 49'30" | 172*   | 6 " " "                  |
|         |      | 17:30 | 51'30" | 172    |                          |
| 18      | 3    | 8:30  | 66'30" | 176    | Pressure removed         |
|         |      | 11:30 | 69'    | 197    | *Balance between ex-     |
|         |      | 12:00 | 70'    | 210    | ternal and internal      |
|         |      | 15:00 | 73'    | 234    | pressure (or leakage     |
|         |      | 17:00 | 75'    | 244    | point) was reached       |
| 19      | 4    | 8:30  | 90'30" | 360    | in this experiment at    |
|         |      | 12:00 | 94'    | 398    | 5 atm. or 75 lbs. per    |
| 20      | 5    | ..... | .....  | .....  | sq. inch.                |
| 21      | 6    | 9:00  | 139'   | 604    | Top of manometer reached |

other cultures within the series with the control, on a percentage basis. The *percentage* results can then be compared from one experiment to another, which could not be done with the absolute values. Thus, in two series (White, 1940, 232) on the effects of vitamin B<sub>6</sub> on two different strains of roots, one strain in an experiment using 1.0 ppm. vitamin B<sub>6</sub> as the only organic accessory



substance and completed on July 13, 1939, gave a numerical index of 58.6 mm., the other strain, in a similar experiment completed on December 7, 1939, gave a numerical index of only 21.8 mm., but the *percentage* values for the two were 60 and 62, respectively. While the use of percentages may be objected to on the grounds that it involves a subjective choice of a standard, it is the *only* way in which non-simultaneous experiments can be compared and has proved very satisfactory as a method of presenting results. Three examples of graphical representations will serve to show the types found most useful (Figs. 45-47).

*Interpretation of results.* While the results themselves must, wherever possible, be presented in numerical form with a definite idea of the degree of accuracy and significance which can be attached to them, the interpretation of results is the duty of the observer. It is necessary for him to take into account not merely the numerical data but also many qualitative features of the results which cannot be set down in numerical form. Interpretation involves the integration of many sorts of information which only the person who actually handles the cultures can have available. How this is to be done is a matter of personal inclination and cannot be presented in any handbook. Yet it is in this, just as much as in the

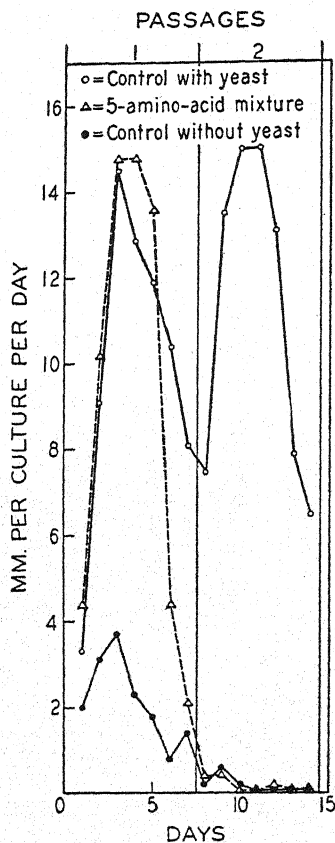


FIG. 45. A line graph recording the average daily increment rates of three series of cultures, 20 roots in each series, maintained for 14 days (two passages), each in a different nutrient.

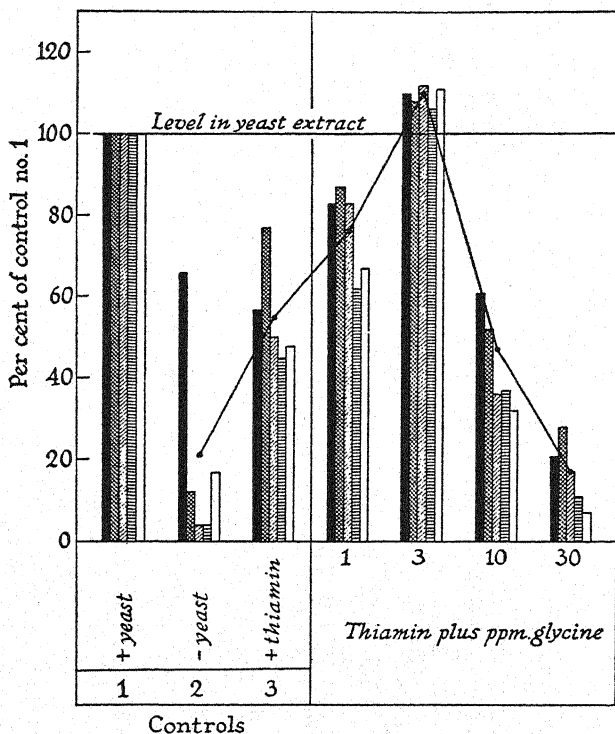


FIG. 46. A histogram recording the average weekly increment rates of 6 sets of cultures grown in as many different nutrients through 5 successive passages, each of one week's duration. The results are expressed as percentage of the increment rate in the control nutrient containing salts, carbohydrate, and yeast extract. Each vertical column represents the average of 20 cultures for a single week. The solid dots connected by solid lines represent the averages for all five passages (5 weeks) in each solution. (From White, P. R. 1939. *Plant Physiol.* 14: 531, fig. 4, 182.)

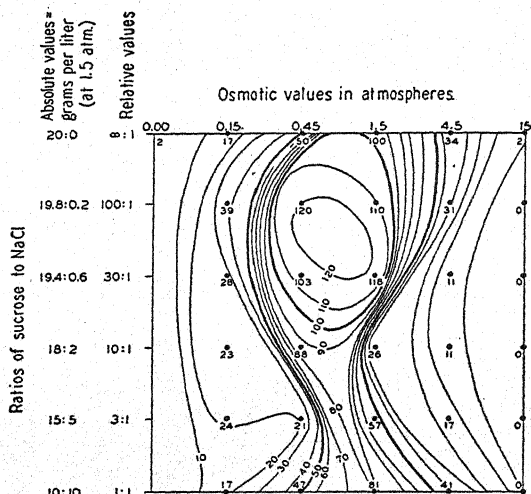


FIG. 47. An isopleth diagram (three-dimensional graph) showing the approximate average increment rates (indicated by isopleth lines) obtained when tomato roots were grown in solutions in which the concentrations of sucrose and of sodium chloride were simultaneously varied in a regular way so as to obtain a graded series of ratios (indicated on the ordinates) and a simultaneous graded series of osmotic values (indicated on the abscissae). This type of diagram, which may also be built into the form of a solid graph like a relief map, is extremely useful when it is desired to record the effects of the interaction of two simultaneous variables. (From White, P. R. 1942. *Plant Physiol.* 17: 159, fig. 5, 37.)

recording of data, that the scientist shows his true calibre. It does not seem amiss, therefore, to emphasize the importance as well as the difficulty of this phase of any experimental project.

#### SUMMARY

The significance of any piece of scientific work rests primarily on the ability to express results in quantitative terms and the reliability of these terms themselves. The measurement of cultures and the interpretation and evaluation of such measurements are, thus, matters of prime importance. Plant tissue cultures may be measured by determining protein nitrogen, dry weight, respiration intensity, area, volume, and doubtless other characteristics. The first three methods require the destruction of the tissue studied. With callus cultures none of these methods is fully satisfactory and a subjective criterion can scarcely be avoided. With root cultures linear increment has been found to be a satisfactory criterion of growth which is easily and accurately obtained, yet does not involve destruction of the tissue studied. Measurement of the central axis alone, ignoring all branches, is in error by about 5 to 8 per cent as compared to dry weights. Linear measurements can be made with a mean error of 6 to 8 per cent, an accuracy comparable to that obtainable

in making dry weight determinations. In order to reduce the random error, each experiment should include at least 20 replications in each environmental complex, and with this number a difference of at least 30 per cent of the control value must be produced by any given variable before that variable can safely be assumed to be responsible for the difference. Records are kept in standard notebooks of a size to be slipped into the coat pocket. Final results may be presented as tables, graphs, histograms, or models. In order that experiments carried out at different times may be compared, it is desirable to express results in terms of percentages of a control maintained under as nearly as possible standardized conditions.

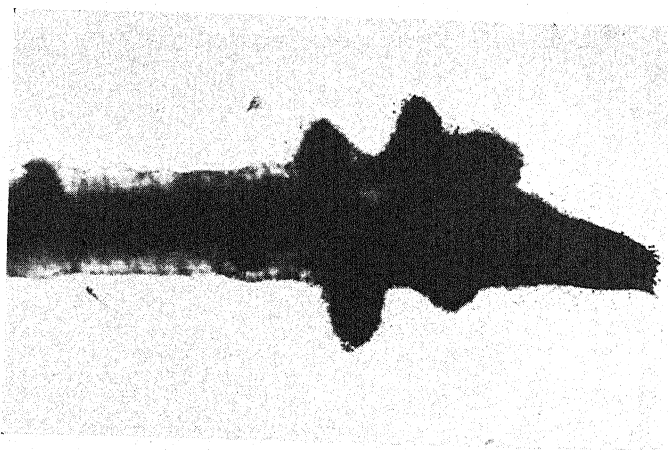


FIG. 48. Tip of excised tomato root grown for one week in a complete nutrient to which were added  $3 \times 10^{-6}$  g. of indole acetic acid per ml. of nutrient. Failure of the axis to elongate has crowded the branch-primordia which are usually scattered over many centimeters of root into a few millimeters giving the appearance of a "rooting" response.  $\times 25$ .

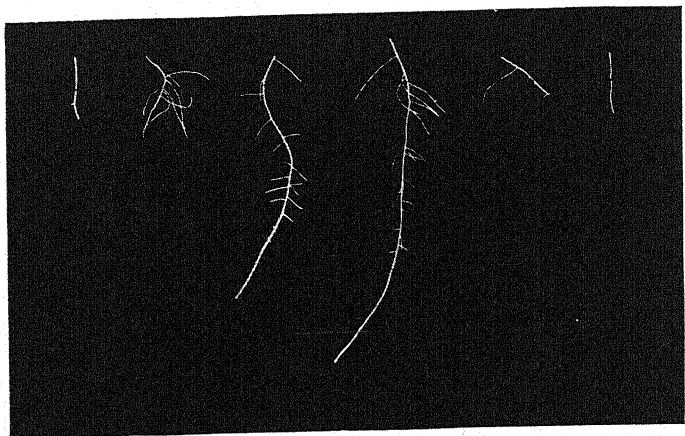


FIG. 49. Excised tomato roots grown in solutions containing, in addition to other essential constituents, the following concentrations of  $\text{Fe}_2(\text{SO}_4)_3$ , reading from left to right: none, 0.6, 1.8, 6.0, 18.0, and  $60.0 \times 10^{-6}$  M. Photograph was taken after cultivation for one week. (From White, P. R. 1942. *Plant Physiol.* 17: 158, fig. 4, 37.)



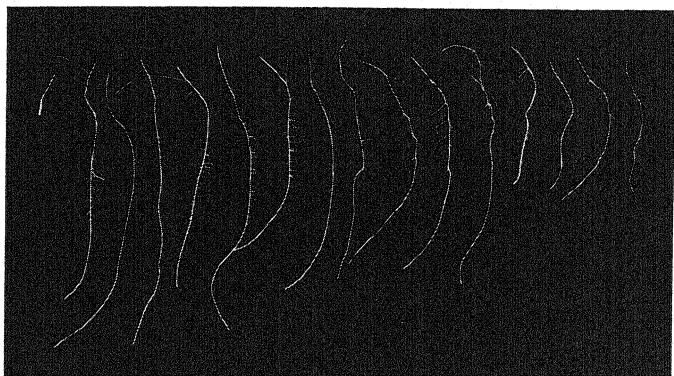


FIG. 50. Excised tomato roots grown in solutions containing, from left to right, the following concentrations of  $\text{Fe}_2(\text{SO}_4)_3$ : none, 0.675, 1.35, 2.025, 2.7, 3.375, 4.05, 4.725, 5.4, 6.077, 6.75, 7.425, 8.1, 8.775, 9.45, and  $10.125 \times 10^{-6}$  M. The *linear* increments of roots grown in iron concentrations from 1.35 to  $5.4 \times 10^{-6}$  M are greater than at higher concentrations, but the branches are short and the general habit poor. Experience has shown that roots grow more satisfactorily and for longer periods if the iron concentration is from 6.0 to  $7.0 \times 10^{-6}$  M. The extreme sensitivity of these roots to slight variations in concentration of ions which are present in as minute amounts as is iron is one of the striking characteristics of such cultures.

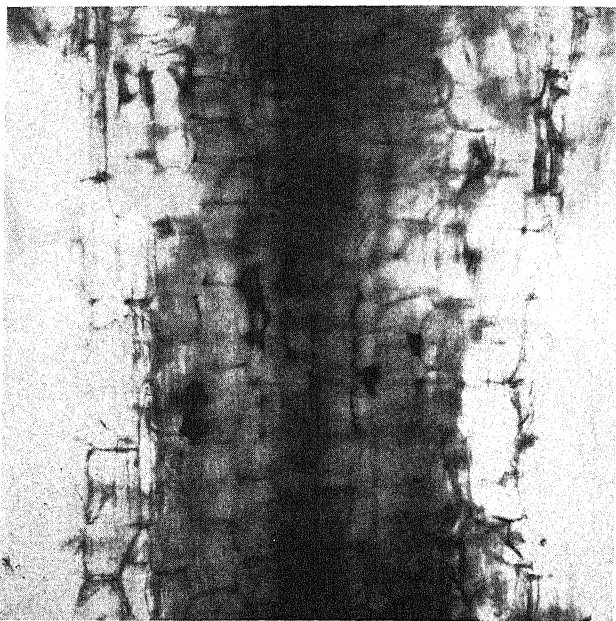


FIG. 51. Surface view of the region of elongation of a tomato root grown in a solution containing indole acetic acid, showing the scattered necrotic lesions resulting from plasmolysis (explosion) of many cortical cells. Compare with Fig. 56 which shows a comparable region of a root grown in a nutrient lacking indole acetic acid.  $\times 150$ .

CHAPTER IX

TISSUE CULTURE AND THE STUDY OF  
PROBLEMS IN THE PATHOLOGY  
AND GENERAL PHYSIOLOGY  
OF PLANTS

The history of any biological method covers, in general, three phases which may or may not be simultaneous. These are: the development and perfection of basic techniques; the application of those techniques to already recognized problems; and the formulation of new and unforeseen applications. Harrison (1907, 131) began with the second phase in this series, having before him a definite problem, the elucidation of the origin of nerve fibrils, before he devised the tissue culture technique. Having solved that particular problem by relatively simple methods, he found no further incentive to perfect or expand the technique and turned to other problems amenable to other techniques. Carrel (1911 *et seq.*, 120), on the other hand, without a *specific* problem but with a less formulated concept of a vast field of problems, took this technique and perfected it to a very high degree. The application to new but specific prob-

lems again passed to a third set of workers, where Fell used it in studying bone-phosphatase activity (Fell, 1928 *et seq.*, 392-401), Warburg in studying tumor metabolism (Warburg, 1923, 272, 1926, 273; Warburg and Kubowitz, 1927, 274), Rivers in growing vaccines (Rivers, Haagen, and Muckenfuss, 1929, 440, 441; Rivers and Ward, 1935, 442), etc.

The plant tissue culture idea began with a theory rather than with a specific problem. Haberlandt's theory (1902, 98) gave rise to a technique in the hands of Gautheret (1932 *et seq.*, 48), White (1934 *et seq.*, 65), and others. Being of much more recent development than the animal tissue culture technique, it has no such great literature of applications, yet it has already found a variety of fields of usefulness and will doubtless find many more in the future.

The applications of the tissue culture technique fall for the most part in three fields: in physiology, in pathology, and in morphogenesis.

#### PHYSIOLOGY

*Gross reactions.* As we have seen elsewhere, that aspect of a culture's reaction to its environment which can be most easily recorded in quantitative terms is its increase in mass. Its alterations in form come second, while in the third rank

in ease of investigation, but by no means third in importance, are its changes in rate of activity as evinced in terms of enzymatic digestion, respiration, photosynthesis (if any), etc.

Mass increase has been used in measuring cultures' behavior towards nutrient variables, vitamins, temperature and light changes, and so on. In this way it has been demonstrated, for example, that, whereas the *absolute concentrations* of various ions or molecules which give optimal growth rates differ widely for different elements—0.05 M for sucrose (Robbins, 1922, 57; Bonner and Addicott, 1937, 42; White, 1932, 63), 0.02 M for calcium and magnesium (White, 1932, 141), 0.000,002 M for iron (Figs. 49, 50) (White, 1932, 141; Robbins and Schmidt, 1938, 60), and 0.000,000,3 M for thiamin (Robbins and Bartley, 1937, 222; Bonner, 1937, 198; White, 1937, 231)—the range around these optima which will still permit normal growth is in almost all cases of about the same magnitude, from about 0.5 to 5.0 times the absolute optimal value (White, in press). The capacity of the tissue to adjust its behavior *vis a vis* these widely different substances appears to be about the same, irrespective of the substance under investigation. These powers of adjustment may be enhanced or reduced according to the existing conditions as regards *other* variables in the environment with

which they have no apparent connection. Thus, cultures grown in a glycine-thiamin nutrient give results which, at their best, are superior to the best results obtained in a yeast nutrient, yet in a glycine-thiamin nutrient they appear to be far more sensitive to temperature changes than in a yeast nutrient, so that at suboptimal or supraoptimal temperatures the relations between growth rates in these two nutrients may be just reversed (White, unpublished). The presence of a large number of substances of various character in the yeast extract seems to "buffer" the cultures against a too great sensitivity to other limiting factors as compared to the few substances in the synthetic (glycine-thiamin) solution. Perhaps this is one reason for past failures to obtain satisfactory growth of animal tissues in simple nutrients. Studies of this sort bid fair to give us considerably better insight into the functions and interactions of the various nutrient molecules and ions as well as other environmental variables in the plant's economy.

*Qualitative changes.* A tissue's or organ's reaction to nutritional variables may, of course, be studied qualitatively as well as quantitatively. The reaction to indole acetic acid and its homologues serves as a striking but by no means isolated example. A graded series of concentrations

of indole acetic acid added to a basic nutrient will give quantitative results which may be expressed in a fairly uniform curve (Fig. 52) (Fiedler, 1936, 45; Geiger-Huber, 1936, 214; Geiger-Huber u. Burlet, 1936, 215; Duhamet, 1939, 209; Bonner

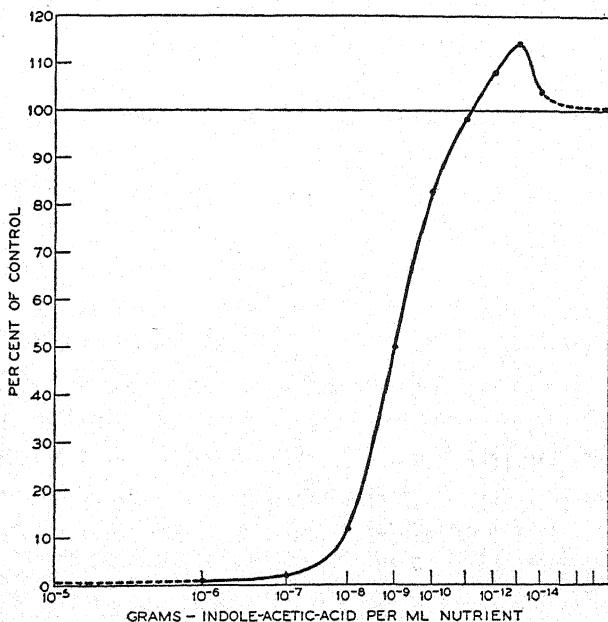


FIG. 52. Graph showing the relative rates of increment of excised tomato roots grown for one week in a complete nutrient to which had been added (from left to right) decreasing concentrations of indole acetic acid. While  $10^{-12}$  and  $10^{-13}$  g. of indole acetic acid per ml. of nutrient gave results which might indicate a stimulative effect, the improvement over the control without indole acetic acid was less than the probable error of the experiment and hence of doubtful significance.

and Koepfli, 1939, 343; White, unpublished). But it is also possible to observe, at concentrations just exceeding the threshold level for growth retardation, a characteristic shortening and thickening of the root axis, resulting in a crowding of the branch primordia into a relatively small space (Fig. 48) (Leonian and Lilly, 1937, 219). This gives an *apparent* but not *real* increase in the number of branches and simulates a "rooting" response, although in point of fact a rapidly growing culture of the same age, grown in a nutrient lacking indole acetic acid, would normally form just as many branches but scattered over from 10 to 20 times as great a length of root. Root cultures deprived of potassium continue to grow in length with unimpaired vigor but become progressively more and more slender and fail to branch, as if all the potassium present in the original explant was being retained in the apical meristem so that none was available for the formation of branch primordia. Omission of iodine from the nutrient likewise leaves the culture *quantitatively* unimpaired but results in a spasmodic growth, the tips dying after 3 or 4 days and a series of new branches developing, giving a picture quite different from that produced by potassium deficiency (White, in press).

*Changes in activity.* As has already been



pointed out, changes in *mass* and in *form* are only secondary symptoms of the real activity of the tissue and must be interpreted with some caution. The activity of the tissue can be studied in a somewhat more direct fashion by examining its capacities for fermentation or more especially its respiratory activity. This has been done, to date, in only a single piece of work, carried out on callus cultures of *Salix capraea* by Plantefol (1938, 256, 257) in co-operation with Gautheret. Both callus cultures and root cultures, because of their relatively reduced dimensions which permit a comparatively easy gas interchange between culture and nutrient, because of their freedom from trauma, and because of their high growth rates, should provide ideal material for study of processes of this sort (Warburg, 1923, 272, 1926, 273).

Nothing has been done in the study of photosynthetic activity using plant tissue cultures. Roots normally do not possess such activity and that of callus cultures is probably low so that they do not appear likely to prove very useful in this respect.

While these are some of the obvious tissue activities which suggest themselves as possible subjects of investigation, there certainly exist less obvious but no less important ones. One of these turned up unexpectedly in the form of a glandular

function in root tissues. Root cultures, although immersed in nutrient fluid, nevertheless form well differentiated vascular strands (Fig. 55). The existence of such strands suggested the possibility that they might be serving some real function, and means were devised which made possible the demonstration of the existence of a unidirectional flow of liquid through these immersed organs (White, 1936, 264). Further study showed that this flow was not continuous but had a diurnal rhythm and that it was maintained even when opposed by very great external pressures (Fig. 53) (White, 1938, 267-269). The existence of a rhythmic secretion was verified by Grossenbacher (1938, 243, 1939, 244), and the unidirectional character of the flow and the magnitude of the force were verified by Rosene (1937, 259, 1941, 260). A correlative diurnal rhythm in respiration rate has likewise been demonstrated in growing excised roots (White, 1942, 37, 38). The techniques required for study of this phenomenon are far from simple, so that investigations thereon have been intensive rather than extensive (Figs. 56-58). The problem is, however, an important one in its bearing on the question of water movement in plants and of glandular activity in general. It serves as an excellent example of the unforeseen applications which a new technique may find.

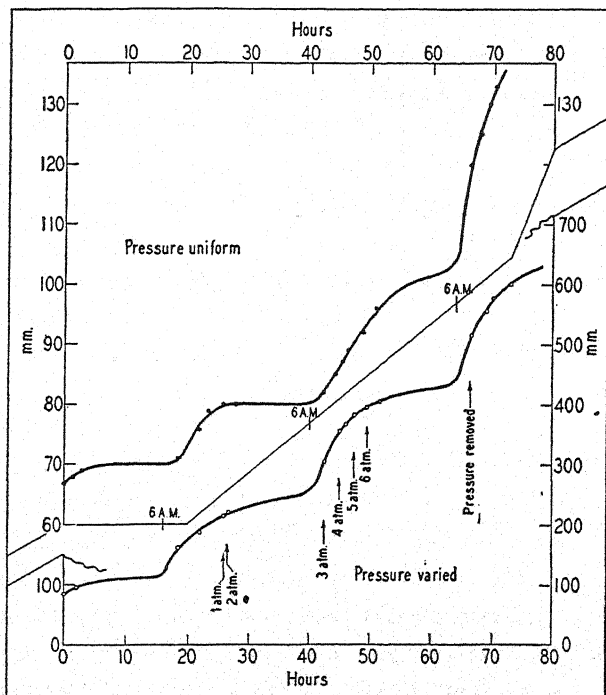


FIG. 53. Graph showing the rates of water secretion of two similar tomato roots over a period of 3½ days, one (above) against uniform (atmospheric) pressure, the other (below) against imposed pressures up to 90 lbs./sq. in. The diurnal rhythm with which secretion proceeds is a striking characteristic of the behavior of tissues of this sort. (From White, P. R. 1938. *Am. J. Bot.* 25: 226, fig. 6, 267.)

*Tropisms.* Kotte (1922, 52) and Fiedler (1936, 45) have both made cursory observations on geotropic response of roots grown in an agar substratum and report normal curvature. It has been the experience of this laboratory that roots floated on or near the surface of a liquid substratum show no such response. Two possible explanations of this difference have suggested themselves—either that the positive chemotropic response to the oxygen gradient in a liquid medium is more powerful than the geotropic response and masks the latter (an explanation which *should* be equally applicable to a semi-solid substratum) or that the absence of a fixed support or fulcrum from which to bend makes it impossible for a root to retain a unilateral orientation. The positive reaction on agar seems to support the latter explanation, yet, once a root has grown long enough in a liquid nutrient to curve around the flask somewhat, it has built up a bilateral symmetry which should make a reaction to gravity possible. This does not take place. Yet in experiments in which roots were fixed in a constantly aerated medium lacking an oxygen gradient, the response reappeared (White, unpublished). A clear explanation is yet to be obtained. This example should suffice to show that cultures of this sort are capable of serving as excellent material for certain types of tropistic studies.

*Cellular reactions.* While the use of hanging-drop cultures adapted to continuous observation of single cells has so far been little developed as applied to plant tissue cultures, there seems to be no *a priori* reason why questions of the reactions of individual cells should not be followed by means of such a technique. This has, indeed, been done in a number of scattered instances. The gradual resorption of starch from the plastids in hanging-drop cultures of *Stellaria media* has been studied in this way (Fig. 54) (White, 1933, 116). The localization of tyrosinase in the plastids of root-hairs and cortical cells has been demonstrated by

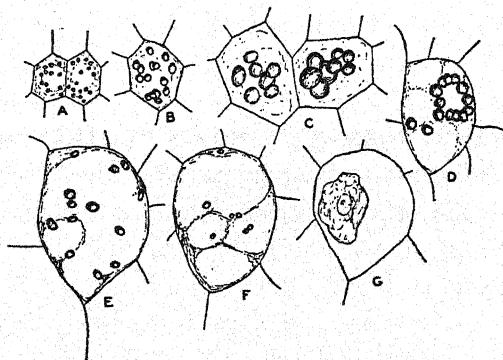


FIG. 54. A typical developmental cycle of individual cells in a culture of the stem tip of *Stellaria media* maintained for two weeks in a hanging drop of nutrient, showing the progressive increase and then decrease in size of the plastids as the cell grows, reaches maturity, passes into senility, and finally dies. (From White, P. R. 1933. *Protoplasma* 9: 110, fig. 19, 116.)

growing root cultures in a nutrient containing 5 ppm. of tyrosine, a concentration which permits normal growth (Fig. 60) (White, unpublished). The behavior of localized root cells towards indole acetic acid with the formation of scattered necrotic lesions produced by the bursting of individual cells (plasmoptysis) has likewise been studied (Fig. 51) (White, unpublished). The tendency towards differentiation of scalariform cells in the interior of callus cultures (White, 1939, 78) may be looked upon as an example of cellular response to a particular environmental complex, in this case one of low available oxygen content (Figs. 62, 63, 65, 66). Cyclosis can be observed very satisfactorily in the large "callus-blasen" to be found on the surfaces of callus cultures (Fig. 61) (White, 1932, 89), which should facilitate an accurate study of the effects of environmental variables on this process.

These serve merely to point out some few places at which physiological processes have been or can be approached by means of tissue cultures.

#### PATHOLOGY

In the field of phytopathology, the most obvious of all applications of a new technique for the cultivation of phanerogamic tissues is in the maintenance of such tissues as substrata for either obligate or facultative pathogens. The method as

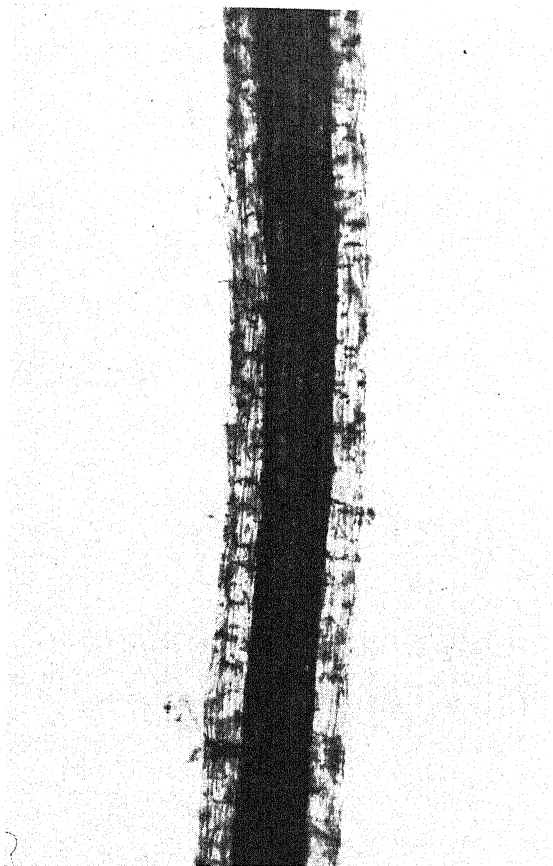


FIG. 55. Optical longitudinal section of the region of maturation of a growing excised tomato root, showing the well-differentiated stele.  $\times 90$ . (From White, P. R. 1938. *Am. J. Bot.* 25: 223, fig. 1, 267.)

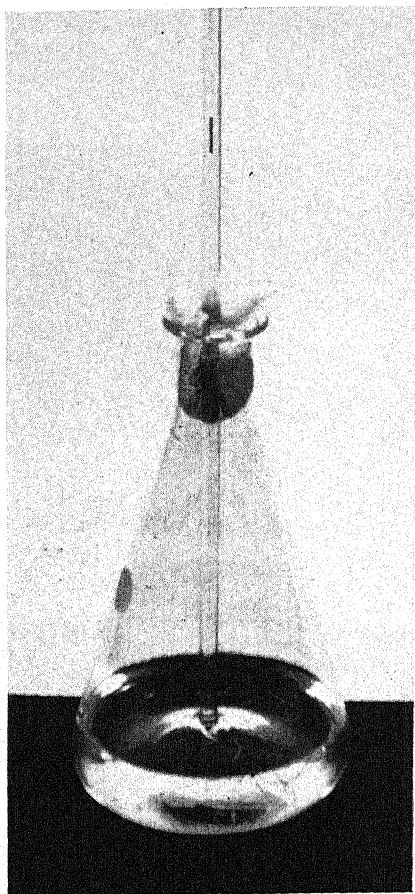


FIG. 56. A manometer attached to a single excised root growing in its culture flask. Water is secreted into the manometer, forcing the colored index drop upward in the capillary. (From White, P. R. 1938. *Am. J. Bot.* 25: 224, fig. 2, 267.)



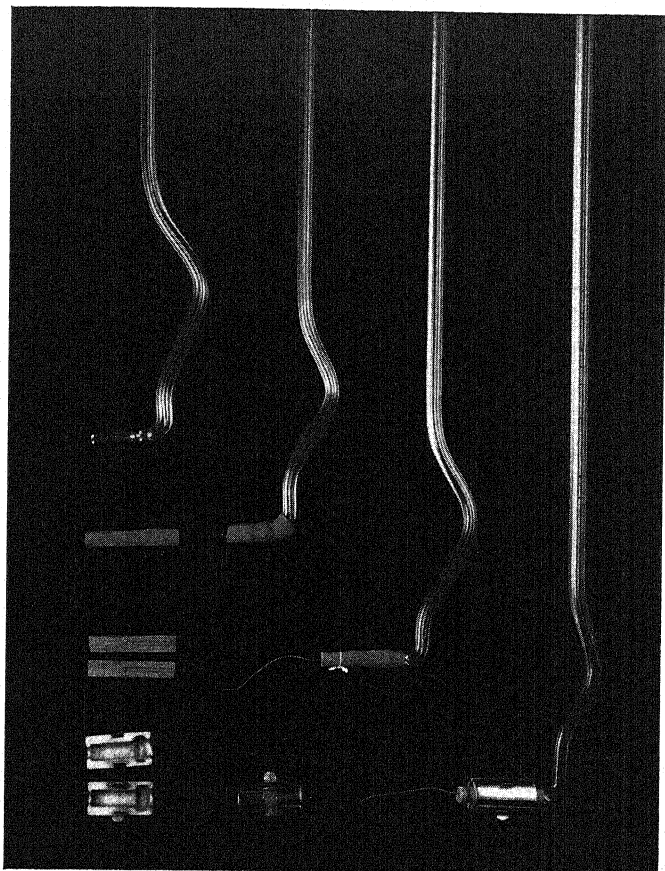


FIG. 57. Details of equipment used in studying the basipetal secretion of water by excised tomato roots, showing the glass manometers, rubber hose, and metal clamps at various stages in their assembly. (From White, P. R. 1938. *Am. J. Bot.* 25: 225, fig. 5, 267.)

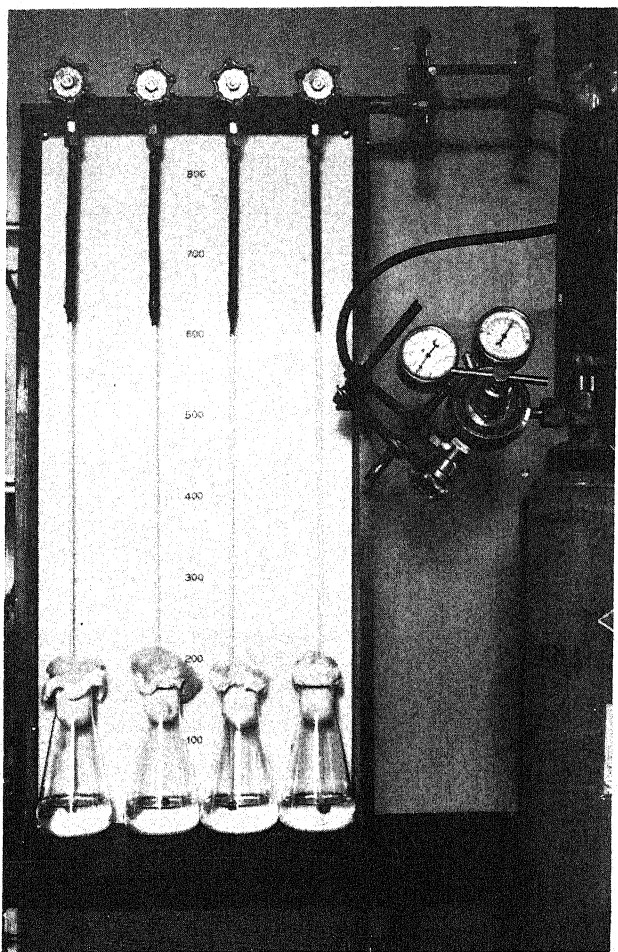


FIG. 58. Assembly of four manometers with their attached roots and culture flasks, coupled by a manifold to a tank of compressed nitrogen in such a manner that the force with which water is driven into the capillaries by the secretory activity of the roots can be balanced against a known gas pressure and thus measured. (From White, P. R. 1942. *Sigma Xi Quarterly* 30: 132, fig. 13, 334.)

it stands today is hardly usable for the latter, for the obvious reason that the basic nutrient for tissues is also an excellent nutrient for many of these organisms. It may, of course, be possible to modify the nutrient in such a way as to make it suitable for the host tissue but not for the infecting organism. Lewis and McCoy (1933, 301) used a primitive sort of organ-culture technique in the study of bacterial nodule formation on the roots of legumes. Although their results were not entirely satisfactory, they suffice to indicate one direction in which the more highly perfected techniques may prove useful. Riker and Berge (1935, 317) foresaw some such possibility in connection with their studies of crown gall organisms, as did Nobécourt and Dusseau (1938, 311) and Berthelot and Amoureux (1937, 276). Nothing has been done with fungi except Gioelli's observations on the effects of chance contaminations on his cambium cultures (1938, 292). If the roots of cereals can be grown in the same manner as those of dicotyledonous plants, they should serve as interesting substrata for the study of rust infections.

Viruses in tissue culture have been studied to a somewhat greater extent than have bacteria and fungi, though still barely enough to give a suggestion of the possibilities. Viruses of a considerable number of diseases of the mosaic group have

been cultivated in excised roots of tomato (White, 1934, 438, 1936, 439). (See Chapter VI.) Diseases which cause only moderate local injury and which move rapidly into all parts of the host can be maintained indefinitely in tissue cultures without difficulty and without essential change in the methods. Here they produce no macroscopically visible symptoms. By aliquot titration, it is possible to follow the rate of multiplication of the virus as a function of host-tissue multiplication (Fig. 59) and to show that the two rates are independent of one another. Stanley (1938, 437) has used such cultures as a source of virus in order to demonstrate the essential identity of the chemistry of virus protein produced in these chlorophyll-free tissues and of that derived from the usual leaf tissues with their high chlorophyll content and activity. Viruses which cause a high degree of local injury and which have a slow migration rate in the tissue are somewhat more difficult to maintain in culture. A considerable amount of older tissue must be included in every explant along with the usual meristem, since the meristems themselves are often virus-free. Otherwise, the virus may be left behind in the discarded tissue and a strain of healthy tissue segregated for cultivation. Such healthy strains have been segregated from cultures carrying "cucumber mosaic"

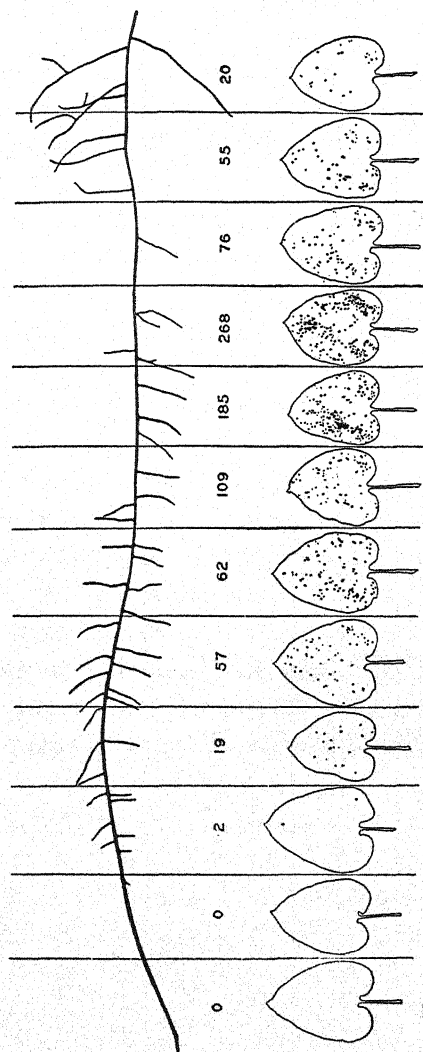


FIG. 59. A typical culture of a tomato root systemically infected with aucuba mosaic virus. The root, about 120 mm. long, was divided into 12 equal pieces. Each piece was reduced to a paste and rubbed into a single leaf of *Nicotiana glauca*. Lesions appeared on the inoculated leaves at the end of 36 hours, their numbers being indicated by the figures across the center of the figure, their distribution by the shadowgram. The results indicate a very low titrable virus content for the first two centimeters at and just behind the growing point, an increasing concentration through the next 7 centimeters, and a reduced titrable concentration in the last 3 centimeters. This last is the region in which striate inclusions appear, the low numbers of lesions probably indicating aggregation of virus particles rather than real reduction in virus content.

virus, Jensen's No. 16 strain of tobacco mosaic virus, and some other virulent types (White, unpublished). Interestingly enough, no method has yet been found for inoculating such cultures (they must be isolated from systemically infected plants), so that there is no danger of a virus-bearing culture, once established, ever becoming contaminated with another virus (White, 1934, 438).

Tissue cultures have to date not been tested as hosts for phanerogamic parasites such as *Cuscuta*, *Viscum*, etc., but should prove useful in the study of phanerogamic host-parasite relations.

One field of investigation in which tissue cultures promise to be extremely useful, which represents essentially an extension of the nutrition studies mentioned above, is that covering the effects of toxic or injurious substances, either of organic or inorganic origin, on the behavior of the tissues of such cultures. The reaction to indole acetic acid mentioned above is an excellent example and serves to show the sorts of observations which are possible in this field using even very simple methods (Figs. 48, 51, 52). The reaction of excised carrot tissue to colchicine has also been studied, by Duhamet (1939, 210).

#### HISTOLOGY AND CYTOLOGY

Tissue and organ cultures furnish unusually clean, uniform, easily handled material for histo-

logical study. Gautheret (1935, 15, 1937, 282, 1938, 283, 284, 1940, 286-289), Dauphiné (1930, 279), Robbins and his colleagues (Robbins and V. B. White, 1936, 62), and Addicott (1941, 196) have utilized root cultures for some anatomical and histological studies. White (1939, 78) Gautheret (1938, 283, 284) and Gioelli (1937, 290) have made a few similar studies with callus cultures. There remains, however, much to be done in this direction.

#### SUMMARY

The tissue culture technique has been applied to the study of the reactions of tissues, organs, and cells to variations in concentrations of nutrient materials, growth stimulants, toxins, and other environmental variables. These reactions can be measured in terms of mass increase, differentiation, level of respiratory activity, enzyme or water secretion, tropistic bending, and many other sorts of behavior. Bacteria, molds, and viruses have been cultivated on growing isolated plant organs as hosts and the host behavior studied. These represent some of the fields to which the technique has already been applied. Many more obviously remain as yet untouched.





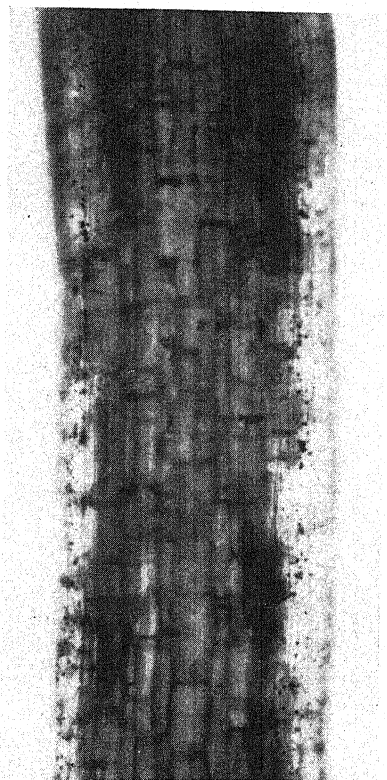


FIG. 60. Optical longitudinal section of an excised tomato root grown for one week in a complete nutrient to which was added 15 mg. of tyrosine per liter of solution, showing the typical blackening of the plastids indicating the presence of tyrosinase.  $\times 150$ .

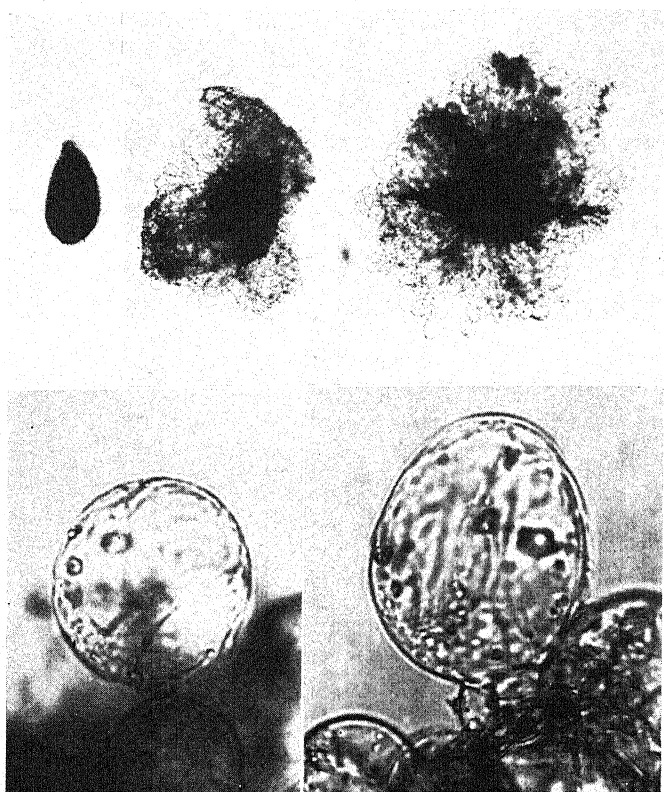


FIG. 61. Above, successive stages (left to right) in the hyperhydric enlargement of the integuments of immature seeds of *Antirrhinum* upon cultivation in hanging drops of nutrient. These large, thin-walled callus cells furnish excellent material in which to observe the details of cellular behavior.  $\times 30$ . (From White, P. R. 1932. Arch. exp. Zellforsch. 11: 615, figs. 14, 18, 19, 89.) Below, single cells from the margins of hanging-drop cultures of immature seeds of *Antirrhinum* showing the nucleus, protoplasmic strands, plastids, oil globules, etc.  $\times 250$ . (From White, P. R. 1932. Arch. exp. Zellforsch. 11: 617 and 619, figs. 21 and 23, 89.)



FIG. 62. Detail of a mass of meristematic cells from the outer region of a culture of undifferentiated callus from a plant of the hybrid, *Nicotiana langsdorffii*  $\times$  *N. glauca*. Delafield's haematoxylin-safranin.  $\times 1000$ . (From White, P. R. 1939. *Am. J. Bot.* 26: 63, fig. 11, 78.)



FIG. 63. A short series of scalariform cells forming an incomplete vascular strand in the interior of a *Nicotiana* callus culture.  $\times 1000$ . (From White, P. R. 1939. *Am. J. Bot.* 26: 63, fig. 8, 78.)

## CHAPTER X

### MORPHOGENESIS

It was suggested at the beginning of this volume that the technique of cultivating excised tissues had its chief *raison d'être* and gave its greatest promise in the study of the origins of form and function, that is, in problems of morphogenesis. Harrison's original problem which led to the first *in vitro* cultivation of animal cells—whether the nerve fibrils originate *in situ* from the innervated cells or their products or whether they originate *ab extra*, by growth from the distant ganglia—was a morphogenetic problem. So was Robbins' original problem—whether the root was dependent on the leafy portions of the plant for anything more than its basic carbohydrate nutrition. So likewise was the problem—what was the nature of the stimulus by which crown gall organisms or their products induce abnormal proliferation of the host cells—which led the author of this volume to undertake the development of a plant tissue culture technique (White, 1931, 32). The number of problems which have been attacked to date by means of this technique is not large. But the

number which it *should* be possible to attack by this means is legion. It seems desirable therefore to outline some of the possibilities. (See Harri-son, 1912, 415, 1933, 416; Fischer, 1922, 405, 1930, 409, 1931, 410; Fischer u. Parker, 1929, 411; Parker, 1934, 427, 1936, 428, 429).

That the developmental and behavior pattern in higher animals is greatly influenced by metabolic products known as "hormones" is today generally recognized. Of recent years, there has grown up a considerable literature on "plant hormones" as well. The first plant hormone, "auxin," was originally studied as a factor in geotropic and phototropic, hence purely orientation, responses (Paál, 1914, 367, 1919, 368; Boysen-Jensen, 1910, 344). It has subsequently come to be looked upon as a true morphogenetic hormone, since it seems to induce the differentiation of roots from tissues that ordinarily rarely, if ever, produce roots' (Went, 1929, 380; Bouillenne et Went, 1933, 277; Thimann and Went, 1934, 229; Laibach, 1935, 218; Thimann and Koepfli, 1935, 376; Cooper, 1935, 345, 1936, 346; Zimmerman *et al.*, 1933, 384, 1935, 385, 386), to control the formation and development of buds (Thimann and Skoog, 1933, 377, 1934, 378; Snow, 1925, 372; LeFanu, 1936, 359; van Overbeek, 1938, 366); to influence the abscission of leaves and of fruits (Gustafson,

1936, 350, 1938, 351, 352, 1939, 353; Gardner and Marth, 1937, 348), to initiate the activity of cambium (Snow, 1933, 373, 1935, 374; Avery, Burkholder, and Creighton, 1937, 341), to regulate the specific branching habit of plants (Lehmann, 1936, 360; Delisle, 1937, 347; Goodwin, 1937, 349), to mediate between genes and growing tissues in controlling the procumbent vs. erect habit (van Overbeek, 1936, 363, 1938, 365), in producing dwarfness (van Overbeek, 1935, 362, 1938, 364), to take part in the production of bacterial root nodules (Thi-mann, 1936, 375), and many other responses. (Compare Appleman, 1918, 340; Went, 1928, 379, 1932, 381). All these responses are attributed to the same substance. If this view is correct, then the differences in response must depend on correlative factors resident in, or in the neighborhood of, the responding cells. A growing, undifferentiated mass of cells, such as a callus culture, or a mass characterized by a definite but limited degree of differentiation, such as an excised root, should not only possess fewer of these internal variables but should permit a more rigorous control of the external variables as well. If auxin is truly a specific root-forming hormone (Went, 1929, 380), it should be possible to set up conditions under which its local application to such a callus culture would regularly induce the local formation of

roots. If auxin is truly a hormone of tropic response (Boysen-Jensen, 1910, 344), its unilateral application to growing excised roots should regularly induce unilateral curvature. Moreover, there have recently been described a number of other specific "hormones," a flower-forming hormone (Melchers, 1937, 361; Hamner and Bonner, 1938, 356), a stem-forming hormone, "caulocaline" (Went, 1938, 382), and a leaf-forming hormone, "phyllocaline" (Went, 1938, 382), in addition to the root-forming hormone, "rhizocaline," which Bouillenne (1938, 206) and Cooper (1935, 345, 1936, 346) believe to be different from the auxin of Went (1929, 380) and Kögl, Haagen-Smit, and Erxleben (1933, 357). If these substances are truly specific for the processes from which they take their names, and if, as we have suggested, the cells of tissue cultures are essentially totipotent, it should be possible to set up cultural conditions for such tissues such that application of a flower-forming hormone would regularly induce the formation of flowers, application of rhizocaline would regularly induce the production of roots, etc. The tissue culture technique seems to offer possibilities for the analysis of these relations, under conditions relatively free of uncontrollable variables.

On the other hand, there is already available



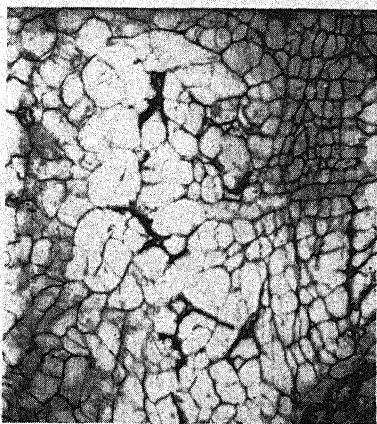
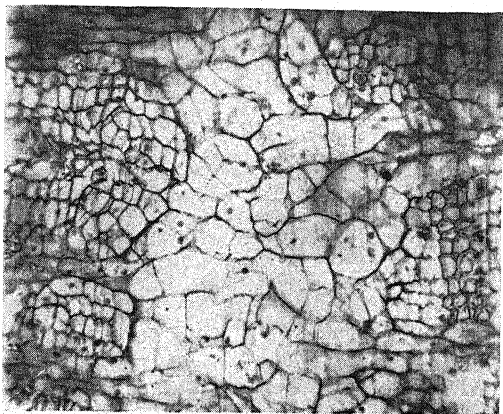


FIG. 64. Above, two cultures of cambium of *Sambucus nigra* grown side by side on a semi-solid nutrient in such a manner that a graft union formed at the center. The exact line of fusion cannot be distinguished.  $\times 100$ . Below, cultures of cambium of *Acer pseudoplatanus* grown as in the picture above. The graft union was much less perfect here.  $\times 150$ . (From Gautheret, R. J. 1935. Recherches sur la culture des tissus végétaux. (Thèse) 250, plate XVIII, 1, 2, 15.)

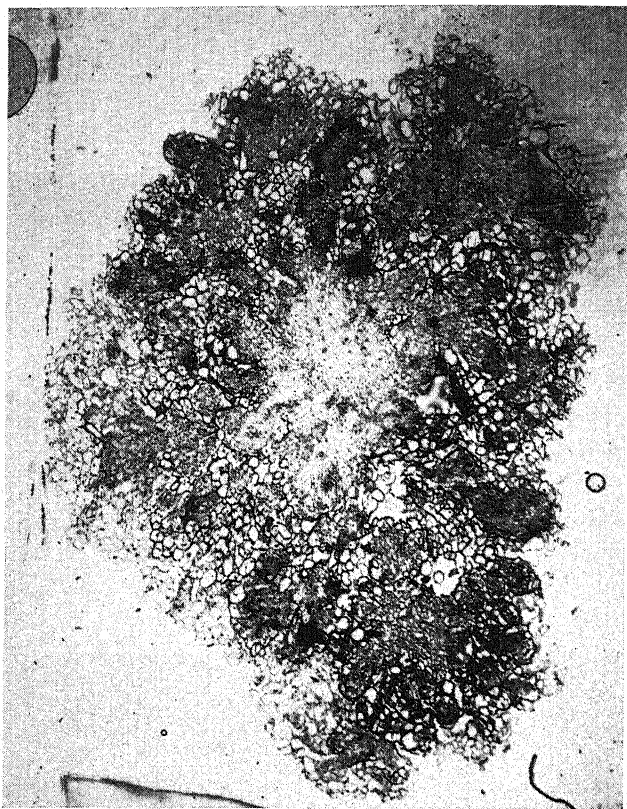


FIG. 65. Transverse section of an 8-weeks-old culture of *Nicotiana* callus, showing the compact, relatively organized central portion surrounded by a broad region of younger, loose, unorganized, and mostly rapidly growing tissue.  $\times 20$ . (From White, P. R. 1939. *Am. J. Bot.* 26: 61, fig. 5, 78.)

FIG. 66. Detail from lower margin of Fig. 65, showing meristematic areas scattered through the upper half of the picture while the lower portion, particularly at the left, is made up largely of giant cells of a mature type.  $\times 138$ . (From White, P. R. 1939. *Am. J. Bot.* 26: 62, fig. 7, 78.)



FIG. 66.



FIG. 67. A typical whorl of disorganized vascular tissue from the interior of a culture of bacteria-free crown-gall tissue of sunflower.  $\times 125$ .

some evidence that the differentiation of specific organs, while it may be influenced by specific substances, may also be controlled to some extent at least by concentration gradients of non-specific substances, hence by polar (physical) as well as chemical relationships. The phenomena of polarity mentioned at the very beginning of this book in connection with the work of Vöchting, Goebel, and others thus offer another field in which the tissue culture technique provides a means of approach not heretofore available. Priestley (1928, 314, 1930, 315, Pearsall and Priestley, 1923, 313) attributes the formation of cambium in radial plant bodies to a radially distributed hydrogen-ion gradient. Lund (1931, 247) and Rosene and Lund (1935, 319) have shown that there is a corresponding electropotential gradient which can be modified by imposing artificial oxygen-hydrogen gradients. White (1939, 333) has shown that an oxygen gradient may be correlated with the response by which undifferentiated callus cultures (Figs. 17, 18, 61, 65) are induced to form stems and leaves without the intercession of a caulocaline (Figs. 68, 71). White (1938, 267) and Rosene (1937, 259, 1941, 260) have shown that there is a hydrostatic flow correlated with the electrostatic gradient along excised and intact roots. But it is as yet quite unknown which of all these gradients

—of pH, of redox-potential, of electrostatic potential, of hydrostatic potential, and of tendency to differentiate—is primary and which secondary. It should be possible in tissue culture to artificially impose or modify any or all of these gradients, except the last, along controlled spatial axes and thus to determine with which other gradients they bear a causal relationship. Brachet has applied this method in animal embryology to the study of effects of imposed oxygen gradients (Brachet, 1937, 387; Brachet and Shapiro, 1938, 388), and Huxley (1926, 417, 1927, 418), Gilchrist (1928, 412), and Vogt (1932, 434) have applied it to the study of temperature gradients. Fife and Framp-ton (1936, 241) have applied it in plant pathology to the study of the causal factors involved in the orientation of a parasitic insect's proboscis in the tissues of the host, with brilliant results. With plant tissue cultures it is a virgin field except for White's preliminary observations on oxygen gradients and differentiation (Figs. 68, 71) (1939, 333, 1942, 334) and, in a sense, those of Nobécourt (1939, 448) and of Gautheret (1940, 286-288) on bud formation. Yet these methods of approach should prove effective with excised organs (roots) and undifferentiated masses (callus) and perhaps even more with young developing embryos, especially if these can be grown from the fertilized egg.

The forces which, in the egg cell of a vascular Cryptogam, for example, result in the first three mitoses segregating cells which normally develop into stem growing point, cotyledon, root, and suspensor, respectively, are sufficiently clean-cut to offer material capable of clear and definite analysis, once a technique for such studies is available. The tissue culture technique should make possible the development of a true science of plant embryology.

One method of approach to problems of organization which has proved especially effective in animal embryology is, as we have seen, that of transplantation, developed to a high degree by Harrison and by Spemann (1936, 431, 432). With plant material, the Boysen-Jensen-Paál-Went technique of transplanting *Avena* coleoptile tips, or agar blocks containing extracts from such tips, is essentially a comparable technique, the coleoptile or agar block (Went, 1928, 379) acting in the same way as an organizer in the sense of Spemann. If plant members such as coleoptile tips (Avery and La Rue), root tips (White *et al.*), stem tips and buds (White), leaf primordia, etc., can be grown in culture, can be subjected to controlled environmental influences, and can then be transplanted into otherwise intact host plants, the question of organ influences at a distance, of correla-



tions of the type suggested by Sachs (1880, 370, 1882, 370, 1893, 320, 371), could be brought within the scope of experimental analysis (see Went, 1941, 383).

Another field in which this technique might presumably find valuable applications is the study of the physiological aspects of heterosis and incompatibility. Robbins has already studied the growth behavior of excised roots from certain hybrid tomatoes, compared with that of roots from the two inbred parents (1941, 318). In cases where the hybrid is "physiologically sterile," due to unsatisfactory endosperm development, as in certain peaches (Tukey, 1933, 327; White, 1928, 332), the tissue culture method has proved its value in permitting the propagation of embryos which would otherwise perish. Where adventitious embryos arise aposporously from the nucellar wall, as in many *Citrus* fruits, *Taraxacum*, certain *Daturas*, etc. (Blakeslee and van Overbeek), the technique should prove valuable, not only in propagating these embryos in refractory cases, but also in determining the causes of polyembryony and aposporous embryogony. Moreover, where "incompatibility" is suspected of being *physiological* rather than *anatomical*, the cultivation of tissues of the two incompatible members together *in vitro* might well throw light on



the nature of this incompatibility. Gautheret (1935, 15) has carried out experiments of this type, though for quite a different purpose, in his preliminary study of heterologous and homologous *in vitro* grafts, which indicate the feasibility of this sort of approach (Fig. 64). (See also Figs. 69, 70.)

The tissue culture technique has recently permitted the transfer of one problem group already mentioned, the "crown gall problem," from the field of pathology to that of experimental morphogenesis with extremely important implications. Tissues isolated from secondary or metastatic crown gall tumors have been grown in tissue culture (Fig. 19). Here they maintained a rapid, disorganized type of growth (Fig. 67) which expressed itself, upon reimplantation into healthy hosts, in the production of new tumors. The tissues were shown to be free of bacteria. The tissue culture technique has thus permitted the experimental manipulation of crown gall tissues free of the original pathogen and the study of the factors involved in the origin of the tumefacient property of the cells themselves. It thus offers a new approach to problems of the origin of malignancy (White and Braun, 1941, 335, 1942, 336, 337; Braun and White, 1942, 436).

The physiological aspects of cellular morpho-

genesis, the causal factors involved in the differentiation of bast-fibers, stone-cells, medullary ray cells, phloem tube elements, and of true meristems, all from the same parenchymatous elements, are also problems open to attack by tissue culture methods.

These suggestions merely serve to point out some of the as yet essentially untouched fields opened up by the development of this technique. The history of the progress of science is a history of such tools.

#### SUMMARY

In the study of the origin of form and function, that is, of morphogenesis, tissue culture methods provide a means of isolating cells, organs, and tissues from the morphogenetic influences of neighboring cells, organs, and tissues and placing them in controlled environments. Questions of the effects of growth substances or "hormones," of chemical and physical gradients, and of cytogenetic factors can be approached by this means with considerable hope of success.

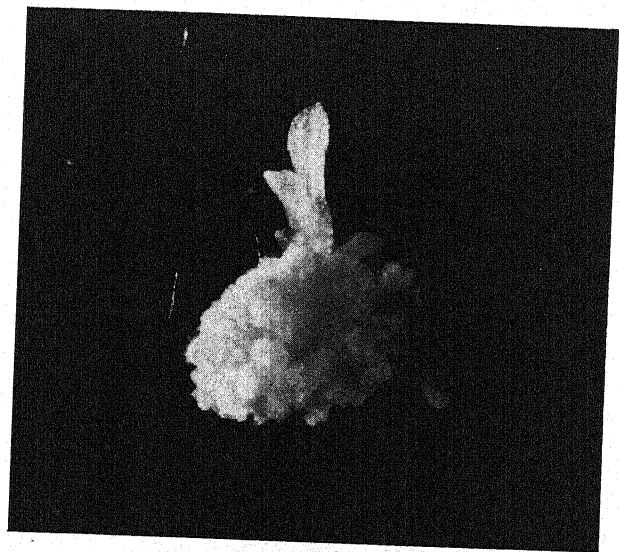


FIG. 68. A culture of *Nicotiana* callus maintained for 8 weeks in an undifferentiated state by repeated transfer on a semi-solid nutrient and then placed for 2 weeks in a liquid nutrient. Reduction in available oxygen supply under the latter conditions has resulted in the formation of differentiated growing points and leaves.  $\times 7.5$ . (From White, P. R. 1939. Bull. Torrey Bot. Club 66: 509, fig. 2, 333.)



FIG. 69. Transverse section of a *Nicotiana* callus culture maintained for two weeks in the anterior chamber of a rabbit's eye. (Courtesy of Dr. Harry S. N. Greene, Yale University Medical School.) The deep-staining areas are animal cells, largely invasive leucocytes, which have in many cases pushed their way between the less deeply staining plant cells. The very dark, broken, lenticular mass at the left is the lens of the eye. The plant tissue contains many giant cells at the margin and some vascular strands but no meristematic areas, indicating that, while cell division had stopped, cell enlargement and maturation had proceeded for some time after insertion of the culture in the eye.  $\times 42$ .

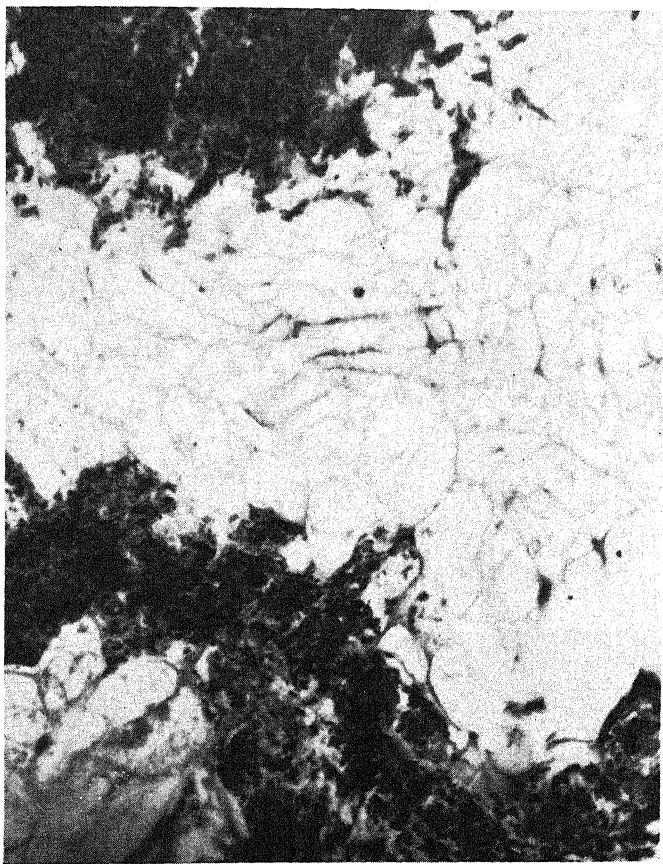


FIG. 70. Detail from the lower right-hand portion of Fig. 69, showing plant tissue with a central vascular strand flanked both above and below by animal cells which have in many cases penetrated into the intercellular spaces.  $\times 400$ .

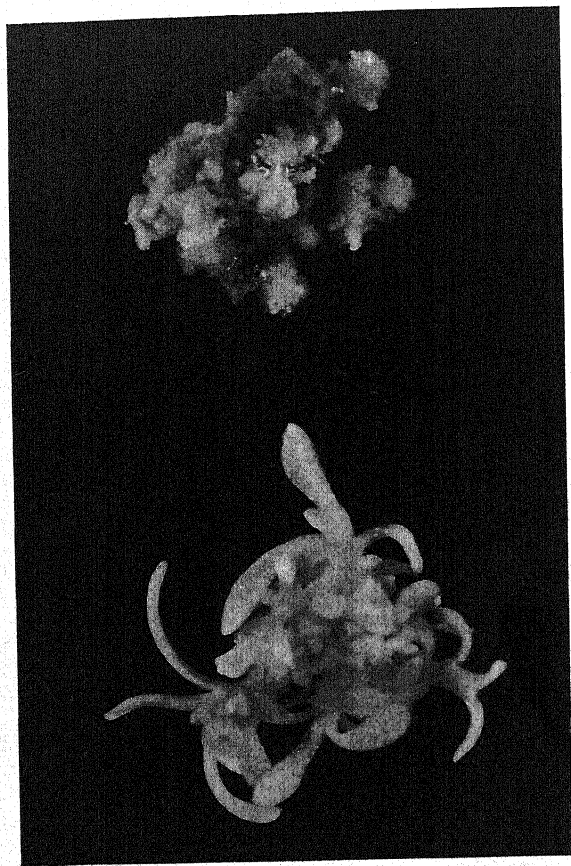


FIG. 71. Two sister cultures of *Nicotiana* callus tissue. That above was grown for 20 weeks on a semi-solid medium providing adequate aeration. That below was grown for 10 weeks on the semi-solid medium followed by 10 weeks in a nutrient of the same constitution except for the omission of the agar. Here the culture was submerged and thus subject to reduced aeration. Stem growing points and leaves of a high order of differentiation have, under the latter conditions, developed from a tissue mass which, on the semi-solid nutrient, appeared to have lost the capacity to differentiate.  $\times 1.5$ . (From White, P. R. 1939. Bull. Torrey Bot. Club 66: 509, fig. 1, 333.)

## BIBLIOGRAPHY

Reference has been made in the foregoing text to publications in a variety of fields, some directly bearing on the cultivation of excised plant organs and tissues, some having only an indirect bearing on this subject. The following list of publications cited must obviously be incomplete. It is believed to contain all the major contributions on plant tissue cultures. The references on collateral subjects, such as plant growth substance studies, animal tissue cultures, etc., are intended to be merely suggestive. The citations have been roughly classified according to subjects to facilitate the reader's search for a given type of material. This classification must obviously appear arbitrary in many cases, but it is hoped may prove useful and suggestive.

|  | Nos.    |
|--|---------|
| I. General treatises .....                               | 1-39    |
| II. Cultivation  |         |
| 1. Roots .....   | 40-66   |
| 2. Callus and cambium .....                              | 67-78   |
| 3. Embryos .....   | 79-89   |
| 4. Tissues other than roots, calluses, and embryos ..... | 90-116  |
| 5. Animal tissues .....                                  | 117-132 |
| III. Nutrition   |         |
| 1. Inorganic   |         |
| a. Plant .....   | 133-144 |
| b. Animal .....  | 145-165 |
| 2. Carbohydrate  |         |
| a. Plant .....   | 166-173 |
| b. Animal .....  | 174-175 |
| 3. Nitrogenous   |         |
| a. Plant .....   | 176-182 |
| b. Animal .....  | 183-194 |
| 4. Fat   |         |
| a. Plant .....   | (None)  |
| b. Animal .....  | 195     |
| 5. Vitamins and hormones                                 |         |
| a. Plant .....   | 196-232 |
| b. Animal .....  | 233-236 |

|                                     |         |
|-------------------------------------|---------|
| IV. Physiology other than nutrition |         |
| 1. Plant .....                      | 237-270 |
| 2. Animal .....                     | 271-274 |
| V. Morphology and morphogenesis     |         |
| 1. Plant                            |         |
| a. General .....                    | 275-339 |
| b. Growth substances .....          | 340-386 |
| 2. Animal .....                     | 387-435 |
| VI. Pathology                       |         |
| 1. Plant .....                      | 436-439 |
| 2. Animal .....                     | 440-442 |
| VII. Miscellaneous                  |         |
| 1. Plant .....                      | 443-455 |
| 2. Animal .....                     | 456-457 |

## GENERAL TREATISES

1. Bloom, W. 1937. Cellular differentiation and tissue culture. *Physiol. Rev.* 17: 589-617.
2. Börger, H. 1926. Verfahren pflanzlicher Gewebezüchtung. (Nachtrag zur: Erdmann, Rh. Gewebezüchtung.) *Handb. norm. path. Physiol.*, Band 14, 1.Hälfte: 1000-1002. Springer, Berlin.
3. Burlet, E. 1940. Ueber die pflanzliche Organkultur und ihre Anwendung bei physiologischen Untersuchungen. *Ber. schweiz. bot. Ges.* 50: 519-544.
4. Carrel, A. 1924. The method of tissue culture and its bearing on pathological problems. *Brit. Med. Jour.* 2: 140-145.
5. ———. 1924. Tissue culture and cell physiology. *Physiol. Rev.* 4: 1-20.
6. ———. 1928. Modern techniques of tissue culture and results. *Arch. exp. Zellforsch.* 6: 70-81.
7. ———. 1931. The new cytology. *Science* 73: 297-303.
8. ———. 1937. Le présent et l'avenir de la cytologie expérimentale. *Arch. exp. Zellforsch.* 19: 121-128.
9. Ephrussi, B. 1932. La culture des tissus. pp. 233. Gauthier-Villars, Paris.
10. Erdmann, Rh. 1920. Einige grundlegende Ergebnisse der Gewebezüchtung aus den Jahren 1912-1920. *Ergeb. Anat. Entw.-geschichte* 23: 420-500.



11. ———. 1930. *Praktikum der Gewebepflege oder Explantation besonders der Gewebezüchtung*. Ed. 2. Springer, Berlin.
12. Fiedler, H. 1938. Die pflanzliche Gewebe- und Organkultur. *Ztschr. Bot.* 33: 369-416.
13. Fischer, A. 1930. *Gewebezüchtung*. Handbuch der Biologie der Gewebezellen *in vitro*. 3. Ausgabe. Miller u. Steinicke, Munich.
14. ———. 1933. Gewebezüchtung und ihre Beziehung zur allgemeinen Biologie. *Zool. Anzeig.*, Suppl. 6: 83-99.
15. Gautheret, R. 1935. *Recherches sur la culture des tissus végétaux: Essais de culture de quelques tissus méristématiques*. Thèse, Univ. Paris. pp. 279.
16. ———. 1937. La culture des tissus végétaux. Son état actuel, comparaison avec la culture des tissus animaux. *Actualités sci. industrielles*. pp. 66. Hermann, Paris.
17. ———. 1938. La culture des tissus végétaux. *Sciences (rev. franç.)* 20: 57-71.
18. Harrison, R. G. 1928. On the status and significance of tissue culture. *Arch. exp. Zellforsch.* 6: 4-27.
19. Krontowski, A. 1928. Explantation und deren Ergebnisse für die normale und pathologische Physiologie. *Ergeb. Physiol.* 26: 370-500.
20. Küster, E. 1909. Ueber die experimentelle Erforschung des Zellenlebens. *Naturw. Wochenschr.* 24: 433-438.
21. ———. 1928. Das Verhalten pflanzlicher Zellen *in vitro* und *in vivo*. *Arch. exp. Zellforsch.* 6: 28-42.
22. Lewis, W. H., and Lewis, M. R. 1924. Behavior of cells in tissue cultures. (In: Cowdry, *General cytology*, Univ. Chicago Press. pp. 385-447.)
23. Loeb, J. 1916. *The organism as a whole*. pp. 379. G. P. Putnam's Son, New York.
24. ———. 1924. *Regeneration from a physicochemical view point*. pp. 143. McGraw-Hill Book Co., Inc., New York.
25. Nobécourt, P. 1939. État actuel de la question des cultures de tissus végétaux. *Soc. Dauphinoise d'études biol.* 322: 54-55.
26. Parker, R. C. 1938. *Methods of tissue culture*. Paul B. Hoeber, Inc., New York.

27. Schleiden, M. J. 1838. Beiträge zur Phytogenesis. Arch. Anat., Physiol., wiss. Med. (J. Muller) 1938: 137-176.
28. Schneider. 1926. Gewebekulturen bei Pflanzen. (In: R. Krause, Enzyklopädie der mikroskopischen Technik. 3. Aufl. 2. Band: 160. Urban u. Schwarzenberg, Berlin.)
29. Schwann, Th. 1839. Mikroskopische Untersuchungen über die Übereinstimmung in der Struktur und dem Wachstume der Tiere und Pflanzen. Nr. 176, Oswalds Klassiker der exakten Wissenschaften. W. Engelman, Leipzig. 1910.
30. Strangeways, T. S. P. 1924. Tissue culture in relation to growth and differentiation. Heffer, Cambridge, England.
31. Vogt, W. 1934. Entwicklungsmechanik und Gewebezüchtung. Arch. exp. Zellforsch. 15: 269-280.
32. White, P. R. 1931. Plant tissue cultures. The history and present status of the problem. Arch. exp. Zellforsch. 10: 501-518.
33. ———. 1936. Plant tissue cultures. Bot. Rev. 2: 419-437.
34. ———. 1939. Recent contributions from excised plant tissue and organ culture studies to the science of plant physiology. Chron. Bot. 5: 166-167.
35. ———. 1939. Plant organ and tissue physiology, as exemplified in growing isolated roots. Papers presented before Am. Sci. Teachers Assoc., A.A.A.S., December, 1938. pp. 15-22.
36. ———. 1941. Plant tissue cultures. Biol. Rev. 16: 34-48.
37. ———. 1942. "Vegetable Dynamics" and plant tissue cultures. Plant Physiol. 17: 153-164.
38. ———. 1942. "Vegetable Dynamics" and plant tissue cultures. Science 95: 520-522.
39. ———. 1942. Plant tissue culture. Ann. Rev. Biochem. 11: 615-628.
40. Willmer, E. N. 1928. Tissue culture from the standpoint of general physiology. Biol. Rev. 3: 271-302.
41. ———. 1935. Tissue culture. pp. 126. Methuen, London.

## CULTIVATION—ROOTS

42. Bonner, J., and Addicott, F. 1937. Cultivation *in vitro* of excised pea roots. Bot. Gaz. 99: 144-170.

43. Chambers, W. H. 1923. Cultures of plant cells. *Proc. Soc. Exp. Biol. & Med.* 21: 71-72.
44. ———. 1924. Tissue culture of plants. *Jour. Mo. State Med. Assoc.* 21: 55-56.
45. Fiedler, H. 1936. Entwicklungs- und reizphysiologische Untersuchungen an Kulturen isolierter Wurzelspitzen. *Ztschr. Bot.* 30: 385-436.
46. Galligar, G. C. 1934. Growth studies on excised root tips. *Diss., Univ. Illinois.*
47. ———. 1939. Growth behavior of one-millimeter excised root tips. *Plant Physiol.* 14: 163-169.
48. Gautheret, R. 1932. Sur la culture d'extrémités de racines. *C. r. soc. biol., Paris*, 109: 1236-1238.
49. ———. 1933. Cultures de méristèmes de racines de *Zea mays*. *C. r. acad. sci., Paris*, 197: 85-87.
50. Heidt, K. 1931. Ueber das Verhalten von Explantaten der Wurzelspitze in nährstofffreien Kulturen. *Arch. exp. Zellforsch.* 11: 693-724.
51. Kotte, W. 1922. Wurzelmeristem in Gewebekultur. *Ber. d. bot. Ges.* 40: 269-272.
52. ———. 1922. Kulturversuche mit isolierten Wurzelspitzen. *Beitr. allg. Bot.* 2: 413-434.
53. Malyshev, N. 1932. Das Wachstum des isolierten Wurzelmeristems auf sterilen Nährböden. *Biol. Ztrbl.* 52: 257-265.
54. ———. 1932. The growth of isolated meristems of roots. *Preslia* 11: 59-61.
55. Marotto, L. 1935. I risultati di alcune culture "*in vitro*" di cellule vegetali isolate. *Rend. r. accad. naz. Lincei, sci. fis. mat. nat. cl.* 21: 211-215.
56. ———. 1936. Esperienze eseguite con apici radicali isolati ed allevati in cultura. *Rend. r. accad. naz. Lincei, sci. fis. mat. nat. cl.* 23: 515-517.
57. Robbins, W. J. 1922. Cultivation of excised root tips and stem tips under sterile conditions. *Bot. Gaz.* 73: 376-390.
58. ———, Bartley, M. A., and White, V. B. 1936. Growth of fragments of excised root tips. *Bot. Gaz.* 97: 554-579.

59. ———, and Maneval, W. E. 1923. Further experiments on growth of excised root tips under sterile conditions. Bot. Gaz. 76: 274-287.
60. ———, and Schmidt, M. B. 1938. Growth of excised roots of the tomato. Bot. Gaz. 99: 671-728.
61. ———, and ———. 1939. Further experiments on excised tomato roots. Am. Jour. Bot. 26: 149-159.
62. ———, and White, V. B. 1936. Limited growth and abnormalities in excised corn root tips. Bot. Gaz. 98: 209-242.
63. White, P. R. 1932. Influence of some environmental conditions on the growth of excised root tips of wheat seedlings in liquid media. Plant Physiol. 7: 613-628.
64. ———. 1933. Liquid media as substrata for the culturing of isolated root tips. Biol. Ztrbl. 53: 359-364.
65. ———. 1934. Potentially unlimited growth of excised tomato root tips in a liquid medium. Plant Physiol. 9: 585-600.
66. ———. 1938. Cultivation of excised roots of dicotyledonous plants. Am. Jour. Bot. 25: 348-356.

#### CULTIVATION—CALLUS AND CAMBIUM

67. Gautheret, R. 1934. Culture du tissu cambial. C. r. acad. sci., Paris, 198: 2195-2196.
68. ———. 1937. Nouvelles recherches sur la culture du tissu cambial. C. r. acad. sci., Paris, 205: 572-574.
69. ———. 1938. Sur le repiquage des cultures de tissu cambial de *Salix Capraea*. C. r. acad. sci., Paris, 206: 125-127.
70. ———. 1938. Recherches sur la culture de fragments de tubercules de carotte. C. r. acad. sci., Paris, 206: 457-459.
71. ———. 1939. Sur le développement de fragments de tubercules de chou-rave. C. r. soc. biol., Paris, 130: 244-247.
72. ———. 1939. Sur la possibilité de réaliser la culture indéfinie des tissus de tubercules de carotte. C. r. acad. sci., Paris, 208: 118-120.
73. ———. 1940. Sur la culture du tissu cambial de Carotte. C. r. soc. biol., Paris, 134: 398-399.

74. Nobécourt, P. 1937. Cultures en série de tissus végétaux sur milieu artificiel. C. r. acad. sci., Paris, 205: 521-523.
75. ———. 1938. Sur les proliférations spontanées de fragments de tubercules de carotte et leur culture sur milieu synthétique. Bull. soc. bot. France 85: 1-7.
76. ———. 1938. Sur la prolifération *in vitro* du parenchyme amylofère du tubercule de *Solanum tuberosum* L. Bull. soc. bot. France 85: 490-493.
77. ———. 1939. Sur la pérennité et l'augmentation de volume des cultures de tissus végétaux. C. r. soc. biol., Paris, 130: 1270.
78. White, P. R. 1939. Potentially unlimited growth of excised plant callus in an artificial nutrient. Am. Jour. Bot. 26: 59-64.

## CULTIVATION—EMBRYOS

79. Dietrich, K. 1924. Ueber die Kultur von Embryonen ausserhalb des Samens. Flora 17: 379-417.
80. Essenbeck, E., u. Suessenguth, K. 1925. Über die aseptische Kultur pflanzlicher Embryonen, zugleich ein Beitrag zum Nachweis der Enzymausscheidung. Arch. exp. Zellforsch. 1: 547-590.
81. Hannig, E. 1904. Zur Physiologie pflanzlicher Embryonen. I. Ueber die Cultur von Cruciferen-Embryonen ausserhalb des Embryosacks. Bot. Ztg. 62: 45-80.
82. La Rue, C. D. 1936. The growth of plant embryos in culture. Bull. Torrey Bot. Club 63: 365-382.
83. ———, and Avery, G. S., Jr. 1938. The development of the embryo of *Zizania aquatica* in the seed and in artificial culture. Bull. Torrey Bot. Club 65: 11-21.
84. Razdorskii, V. 1938. The culture of isolated plant embryos. Priroda akad. nauk. U.S.S.R. 1938: 129-132.
85. Stingl, G. 1907. Experimentelle Studie über die Ernährung von pflanzlichen Embryonen. Flora 97: 308-331.
86. Tukey, H. B. 1933. Artificial culture of sweet cherry embryos. Jour. Hered. 24: 7-12.
87. ———. 1934. Artificial culture methods for isolated embryos of deciduous fruits. Am. Soc. Hort. Sci. 32: 313-322.

88. Werckmeister, P. 1934. Über die künstliche Aufzucht von Embryonen aus *Iris*-Bastardsamen. Gartenbauwiss. 8: 607-608.
89. White, P. R. 1932. Plant tissue cultures. A preliminary report of results obtained in the culturing of certain plant meristems. Arch. exp. Zellforsch. 12: 602-620.

CULTIVATION—TISSUES OTHER THAN ROOTS, CALLUSES  
AND EMBRYOS

90. Bobilioff-Preisser, W. 1917. Beobachtungen an isolierten Palisaden- und Schwammparenchymzellen. Beih. bot. Ztrbl. 33: 248-274.
91. Bonner, J. 1936. Plant tissue cultures from a hormone point of view. Proc. Nat. Acad. Sci., Wash., 22: 426-430.
92. Börger, H. 1926. Ueber die Kultur von isolierten Zellen und Gewebsfragmenten. Arch. exp. Zellforsch. 2: 123-190.
93. Czech, H. 1926. Kultur von pflanzlichen Gewebszellen. Arch. exp. Zellforsch. 3: 176-200.
94. Dauphiné, A. 1929. Sur le développement d'organes embryonnaires isolés. C. r. soc. biol., Paris, 102: 652-654.
95. Gautheret, R. 1933. Cultures de cellules détachées de la coiffe. C. r. acad. sci., Paris, 196: 638-640.
96. ———. 1933. Nouvelles recherches sur la culture des cellules de coiffe. C. r. soc. biol., Paris, 112: 861-863.
97. ———. 1939. Nouvelles expériences sur la croissance des cellules isolées de coiffe de *Lupinus albus*. C. r. soc. biol., Paris, 132: 351-352.
98. Haberlandt, G. 1902. Kulturversuche mit isolierten Pflanzenzellen. Sitzungsber. Akad. Wiss. Wien, math.-naturw.-Kl. 111: 69-92.
99. Kemmer, E. 1928. Beobachtungen über die Lebensdauer isolierter Epidermen. Arch. exp. Zellforsch. 7: 1-68.
100. Knudson, L. 1919. Viability of detached root-cap cells. Am. Jour. Bot. 6: 309-310.
101. Kunkel, W. 1927. Über die Kultur von Perianthgeweben. Arch. exp. Zellforsch. 3: 405-427.
102. Lamprecht, W. 1918. Ueber die Kultur und Transplantation kleiner Blattstücken. Beitr. allg. Bot. 1: 353-398.

103. ———. 1925. Ueber die Züchtung pflanzlicher Gewebe. Arch. exp. Zellforsch. 1: 412-421.
104. La Rue, C. D. 1936. Tissue cultures of spermatophytes. Proc. Nat. Acad. Sci., Wash., 22: 201-209.
105. Moebius, H. 1922. Kulturversuche an extirpierten unfruchteten Samenanlagen. Diss., Leipzig.
106. Molliard, M. 1921. Sur le développement des plantules fragmentées. C. r. soc. biol., Paris, 84: 770-772.
107. Pfeiffer, H. 1931. Beobachtungen an Kulturen nackter Zellen aus pflanzlichen Beerenperikarpien. Arch. exp. Zellforsch. 11: 424-434.
108. Reehinger, C. 1893. Untersuchungen über die Grenzen der Teilbarkeit im Pflanzenreich. Abhandl. zööl.-bot.-Ges., Wien, 43: 310-334.
109. Scheitler, H. 1931. Versuche zur Kultur von Pflanzgeweben. Arch. exp. Zellforsch. 12: 141-176.
110. Schmucker, T. 1929. Isolierte Gewebe und Zellen von Blütenpflanzen. Planta 9: 339-340.
111. Thielman, M. 1924. Über Kulturversuche mit Spaltöffnungszellen. Ber. d. bot. Ges. 42: 429-433.
112. ———. 1925. Über Kulturversuche mit Spaltöffnungszellen. Arch. exp. Zellforsch. 1: 66-108.
113. ———. 1925. Essais de culture des stomates. C. r. soc. biol., Paris, 92: 888-890.
114. Tukey, H. B. 1937. Plant parts of deciduous fruits which give evidence of being favorable for tissue culture. Proc. Nat. Acad. Sci., Wash., 23: 577-580.
115. Uehla, V. 1928. Vorversuche zur Kultur des Pflanzgewebe. Arch. exp. Zellforsch. 6: 370-417.
116. White, P. R. 1933. Plant tissue cultures. Results of preliminary experiments on the culturing of isolated stem tips of *Stellaria media*. Protoplasma 19: 97-116.

## CULTIVATION—ANIMAL TISSUES

117. Burrows, M. T. 1910. The cultivation of tissues of the chick embryo outside the body. Jour. Am. Med. Assoc. 55: 2057-2058.
118. ———. 1910. Culture des tissus d'embryon de poulet et spécialement cultures de nerfs de poulet en dehors de l'organisme. C. r. soc. biol., Paris, 69: 291-292.

119. ———. 1911. The growth of tissues of the chick embryo outside the animal body, with special reference to the nervous system. *Jour. Exp. Zool.* 10: 63-84.
120. Carrel, A. 1911. Die Kultur der Gewebe ausserhalb des Organismus. *Berlin klin. Wochenschr.* 48: 1364-1367.
121. ———. 1912. Neue Fortschritte in der Kultivierung der Gewebe ausserhalb des Organismus. *Berlin klin. Wochenschr.* 49: 533-536.
122. ———. 1912. La vie manifestée des tissus "*in vitro*"; techniques nouvelles et leurs resultats. *Presse med.* 20: 693-694.
123. ———. 1912. Technique for cultivating a large quantity of tissue. *Jour. Exp. Med.* 15: 393-396.
124. ———. 1912. On the permanent life of tissues outside of the organism. *Jour. Exp. Med.* 15: 516-528.
125. ———. 1912. Pure culture of cells. *Jour. Exp. Med.* 16: 165-168.
126. ———. 1923. Nouvelle technique pour la culture des tissus. *C. r. soc. biol., Paris*, 89: 1017-1019.
127. ———. 1923. A method for the physiological study of tissues *in vitro*. *Jour. Exp. Med.* 38: 407-418.
128. ———, and Burrows, M. T. 1910. La culture de tissus adultes en dehors de l'organisme. *C. r. soc. biol., Paris*, 69: 293-294.
129. Gey, G. O. 1933. An improved technic for massive tissue culture. *Am. Jour. Cancer* 17: 752-756.
130. ———, and Gey, M. C. 1936. The maintenance of human normal cells and tumor cells in continuous culture. I. Preliminary report. Cultivation of mesoblastic tumors and normal tissue and notes on methods of cultivation. *Am. Jour. Cancer* 27: 45-76.
131. Harrison, R. G. 1907. Observations on the living developing nerve fiber. *Proc. Soc. Exp. Biol. & Med.* 4: 140-143.
132. ———. 1908. Embryonic transplantation and development of the nervous system. *Anat. Rec.* 2: 385-410.

## NUTRITION—INORGANIC—PLANT

133. Arnon, D. I. 1938. Microelements in culture-solution experiments with higher plants. *Am. Jour. Bot.* 25: 322-325.



134. ———, and Stout, P. R. 1939. The essentiality of certain elements in minute quantity for plants with special reference to copper. *Plant Physiol.* 14: 371-375.
135. ———, and ———. 1939. Molybdenum as an essential element for higher plants. *Plant Physiol.* 14: 599-602.
136. Berthelot, A. 1934. Nouvelles remarques d'ordre chimique sur le choix des milieux de culture naturels et sur la maniere de formuler les milieux synthétiques. *Bull. soc. chim. biol., Paris*, 16: 1553-1557.
137. Hoagland, D. R., and Arnon, D. I. 1941. Physiological aspects of availability of nutrients for plant growth. *Soil Sci.* 51: 431-444.
138. Mayer, G. G. 1929. Der Einfluss verschiedener Nährstoffzuführung auf das Längenwachstum isolierter Wurzeln. *Diss., Giessen*.
- ✓ 139. Robbins, W. J., White, V. B., McClary, J. E., and Bartley, M. 1936. The importance of ash elements in the cultivation of excised root tips. *Proc. Nat. Acad. Sci., Wash.*, 22: 636-639.
140. Stout, P. R., and Arnon, D. I. 1939. Experimental methods for the study of the role of copper, manganese, and zinc in the nutrition of higher plants. *Am. Jour. Bot.* 26: 144-149.
- ✓ 141. White, P. R. 1933. Concentrations of inorganic ions as related to growth of excised root-tips of wheat seedlings. *Plant Physiol.* 8: 489-508.
142. ———. 1933. The .SH radical and some other sources of sulphur as affecting growth of isolated root tips of wheat seedlings. *Protoplasma* 19: 132-135.
143. ———. 1937. Comparison of nutrient salt solutions for the cultivation of excised tomato roots. *Growth* 1: 182-188.
144. ———. 1938. Accessory salts in the nutrition of excised tomato roots. *Plant Physiol.* 13: 391-398.

## NUTRITION—INORGANIC—ANIMAL

145. Drew, A. H. 1922. A comparative study of normal and malignant tissues grown in artificial culture. *Brit. Jour. Exp. Path.* 3: 20-27.

146. ———. 1923. Growth and differentiation in tissue cultures. *Brit. Jour. Exp. Path.* 4: 46-52.
147. Erlichman, E. 1935. Human fibroblasts grown for a year in a medium of sheep plasma and two solutions of known composition. *Am. Jour. Cancer* 24: 393-396.
148. Lewis, M. R. 1916. Sea water as a medium for tissue cultures. *Anat. Rec.* 10: 287-299.
149. ———, and Lewis, W. H. 1911. The cultivation of tissues from chick embryos in solutions of NaCl, CaCl<sub>2</sub>, KCl, and NaHCO<sub>3</sub>. *Anat. Rec.* 5: 277-293.
150. ———, and ———. 1911. The growth of embryonic chicken tissues in artificial media, agar and bouillon. *Johns Hopkins Hosp. Bull.* 22: 126-127.
151. ———, and ———. 1911. The cultivation of tissues in salt solutions. *Jour. Am. Med. Assoc.* 56: 1795.
152. ———, and ———. 1912. The cultivation of chicken tissues in media of known chemical constitution. *Anat. Rec.* 6: 207-211.
153. ———, and ———. 1912. The cultivation of sympathetic nerves from the intestine of chicken embryos in saline solutions. *Anat. Rec.* 6: 7-17.
154. Lewis, W. H. 1921. The effect of potassium permanganate on the mesenchyme cells of tissue cultures. *Am. Jour. Anat.* 23: 431-445.
155. ———. 1923. Cultivation of heart muscle from chick embryos (four to eleven days old) in Locke-bouillon-dextrose-medium. (Abst.) *Anat. Rec.* 25: 111.
156. ———. 1929. The effect of various solutions and salts on the pulsation rate of isolated hearts from young chick embryos. *Contrib. Embryol. Carnegie Inst., Wash., Publ.* 115: 173-192.
157. Locke, F. S. 1895. Artificial fluids as uninjurious as possible to animal tissues. *Boston Med. & Surg. Jour.* 134: 173.
158. ———. 1895. Towards the ideal artificial circulating fluid for the isolated frog's heart. *Jour. Physiol.* 18: 332-333.
159. ———. 1896. Artificial fluids as uninjurious as possible to animal tissues. *Jour. Boston Soc. Med. Sci.* 1, No. 1: 2-3.

160. Ringer, S. 1886. Further experiments regarding the influence of lime, potassium and other salts on muscular tissue. *Jour. Physiol.* 7: 291-308.
161. Tyrode, M. V. 1910. The mode of action of some purgative salts. *Arch. internat. pharmacodyn.* 20: 205-223.
162. Vogelaar, J. P. M., and Erlichman, E. 1933. A feeding solution for cultures of human fibroblasts. *Am. Jour. Cancer* 18: 28-38.
163. ———, and ———. 1934. Some remarks on the growth of human fibroblasts in media containing copper. *Am. Jour. Cancer* 22: 66-75.
164. ———, and ———. 1934. The growth of human fibroblasts in media containing silver. *Am. Jour. Cancer* 22: 555-560.
165. ———, and ———. 1939. The interchangeability of the elements chlorine and iodine in culture media for human thyroid fibroblasts. *Am. Jour. Cancer* 37: 242-251.

## NUTRITION—CARBOHYDRATE—PLANT

166. Galligar, G. C. 1936. Influence of certain organic substances upon the growth behaviour of excised root tips. *Trans. Illinois Acad. Sci.* 29: 59-68.
167. ———. 1938. Correlation between growth of excised root tips and types of food stored in the seed. *Plant Physiol.* 13: 599-609.
168. Knudson, L. 1916. Influence of certain carbohydrates on green plants. *Cornell Univ. Agr. Exp. Sta. Memoir* 9. pp. 75.
169. ———, and Smith, R. S. 1919. Secretion of amylase by plant roots. *Bot. Gaz.* 68: 460-466.
170. Robbins, W. J., and Bartley, M. A. 1937. Use of dextrose by excised tomato roots. *Science* 86: 290-291.
171. Thielman, M. (Tauja-Thielman). 1938. Untersuchungen zur Wahl der Kohlehydrate für Explantationsversuche mit Pflanzengewebe. *Arch. exp. Zellforsch.* 21: 477-522.
172. White, P. R. 1940. Does "C.P. grade" sucrose contain impurities significant for the nutrition of excised tomato roots? *Plant Physiol.* 15: 349-354.

173. ———. 1940. Sucrose vs. dextrose as carbohydrate source for excised tomato roots. *Plant Physiol.* 15: 355-358.

## NUTRITION—CARBOHYDRATE—ANIMAL

174. Ebeling, A. H. 1936. Effect of high concentrations of glucose on fibroblasts, leucocytes, and epithelial cells. *Proc. Soc. Exp. Biol. & Med.* 34: 886-889.
175. Lewis, M. R. 1922. The importance of dextrose in the medium of tissue cultures. *Jour. Exp. Med.* 35: 317-322.

## NUTRITION—NITROGENOUS—PLANT

176. Mueller, J. H. 1935. Studies on cultural requirements of bacteria. V. The diphtheria bacillus. *Jour. Bact.*, 29: 515-530.
- ✓ 177. Robbins, W. J. 1922. Effect of autolized yeast and peptone on growth of excised corn root tips in the dark. *Bot. Gaz.* 74: 59-79.
- ✓ 178. ———, and White, V. B. 1937. Effect of extracts from the corn plant on growth of excised root tips. *Bot. Gaz.* 98: 520-534.
- ✓ 179. White, P. R. 1935. Growth-promoting factors of yeast. The role of amino-acids in the nutrition of excised root-tips of tomato. (Abst.) Paper presented before Am. Soc. Plant Physiol., A.A.A.S., December, 1935.
- ✓ 180. ———. 1937. Separation from yeast of materials essential for growth of excised tomato roots. *Plant Physiol.* 12: 777-791.
181. ———. 1937. Amino acids in the nutrition of excised tomato roots. *Plant Physiol.* 12: 793-802.
- ✓ 182. ———. 1939. Glycine in the nutrition of excised tomato roots. *Plant Physiol.* 14: 527-538.

## NUTRITION—NITROGENOUS—ANIMAL

183. Baker, L. E. 1933. The effect of proteolytic digestion products on multiplication and morphological appearance of monocytes. *Jour. Exp. Med.* 57: 689-704.
184. ———, and Carrel, A. 1926. Effect of the amino acids and dialyzable constituents of embryonic tissue juice on the growth of fibroblasts. *Jour. Exp. Med.* 44: 397-407.

185. ———, and ———. 1926. Action on fibroblasts of the protein fraction of embryonic tissue extracts. Jour. Exp. Med. 44: 387-395.
186. ———, and ———. 1927. Effect of age in serum lipoids and proteins. Jour. Exp. Med. 45: 305-318.
187. ———, and ———. 1928. The effect of digests of pure proteins on cell proliferation. Jour. Exp. Med. 47: 353-370.
188. ———, and ———. 1928. Effect of liver and pituitary digests on the proliferation of sarcomatous fibroblasts of the rat. Jour. Exp. Med. 47: 371-378.
189. ———, and ———. 1928. Nitrogen metabolism of normal and sarcomatous fibroblasts in pure culture. Jour. Exp. Med. 48: 533-547.
190. Carrel, A. 1913. Artificial activation of the growth *in vitro* of connective tissue. Jour. Exp. Med. 17: 14-19.
191. ———, and Baker, L. E. 1926. The chemical nature of substances required for cell multiplication. Jour. Exp. Med. 44: 503-521.
192. Ebeling, A. H. 1921. Fibrin and serum as a culture medium. Jour. Exp. Med. 33: 641-646.
193. ———. 1924. Action des acides aminés sur la croissance des fibroblastes. C. r. soc. biol., Paris, 90: 31-33.
194. Fischer, A., u. Demuth, F. 1928. Eiweissabbauprodukte als wachstumsfördernde Substanzen. Arch. exp. Zellforsch. 5: 131-142.

## NUTRITION—FAT—ANIMAL

195. Baker, L. E., and Carrel, A. 1925. Lipoids as the growth-inhibiting factor in serum. Jour. Exp. Med. 42: 143-154.

## NUTRITION—VITAMINS AND HORMONES—PLANT

196. Addicott, F. T. 1941. Effects of root-growth hormones on the meristem of excised pea roots. Bot. Gaz. 102: 576-581.
197. ———, and Bonner, J. 1938. Nicotinic acid and the growth of isolated pea roots. Science 88: 577-578.

198. Bonner, J. 1937. Vitamin B<sub>1</sub> a growth factor for higher plants. *Science* 85: 183-184.
199. ———. 1938. Thiamin (vitamin B<sub>1</sub>) and the growth of roots: the relation of chemical structure to physiological activity. *Am. Jour. Bot.* 25: 543-549.
200. ———. 1938. Nicotinic acid and the growth of isolated pea embryos. *Plant Physiol.* 13: 865-868.
201. ———. 1940. On the growth factor requirements of isolated roots. *Am. Jour. Bot.* 27: 692-701.
202. ———. 1940. Specificity of nicotinic acid as a growth factor for isolated pea roots. *Plant Physiol.* 15: 553-557.
203. ———, and Axtman, G. 1937. The growth of plant embryos *in vitro*. Preliminary experiments on the role of accessory substances. *Proc. Nat. Acad. Sci., Wash.*, 23: 453-457.
204. ———, and Bonner, D. 1938. Ascorbic acid and the growth of plant embryos. *Proc. Nat. Acad. Sci., Wash.*, 24: 70-75.
205. ———, and Devirian, P. S. 1939. Growth factor requirements of four species of isolated roots. *Am. Jour. Bot.* 26: 661-665.
206. Bouillenne, R. et M. 1938. Contribution à l'étude des facteurs de la neoformation et de la croissance des racines. Rhizocaline, hétéro-auxine, acides aminés, vitamin B<sub>1</sub>. *Bull. soc. roy. bot. belg.* 71: 43-67.
207. Burlet, E. 1936. Zur Methodik der pflanzlichen Organkultur. *Verh. schweiz. naturf. Ges.* 1936: 312-313.
208. Day, D. 1941. Vitamin B<sub>6</sub> and growth of excised tomato roots in agar culture. *Science* 94: 468-469.
209. Duhamet, L. 1939. Action de l'hétéro-auxine sur la croissance de racines isolées de *Lupinus albus*. *C. r. acad. sci., Paris*, 208: 1838-1839.
210. ———. 1939. Action de la colchicine sur la croissance de méristemes radiculaires de *Lupinus albus*. *C. r. soc. biol., Paris*, 131: 757-758.
211. Gautheret, R. 1937. Action de l'acide indol- $\beta$ -acétique sur le développement de plantules et de fragments de plantules de *Phaseolus vulgaris*. *C. r. soc. biol., Paris*, 126: 312-314.

212. ———. 1939. Action de l'acide indol- $\beta$ -acétique sur les tissus du tubercule de carotte. C. r. soc. biol., Paris, 130: 7-9.
213. ———. 1940. Recherches sur l'action de divers substances sur la croissance des cultures de tissus de carotte. C. r. acad. sci., Paris, 210: 186-188.
214. Geiger-Huber, M. 1936. Der Einfluss des Wuchshormons (Heteroauxin) auf das Wurzelwachstum. Verh. schweiz. naturf. Ges. 1936: 313.
215. ———, u. Burlet, E. 1936. Über den hormonalen Einfluss der  $\beta$ -indolylessigsäure auf das Wachstum isolierter Wurzeln in keimfreier Organkultur. Jahrb. wiss. Bot. 84: 233-253.
216. Loo, T. L., and Loo, S. W. 1935. Studies on the culture of isolated root tips under sterile conditions. I. The effect of leaf extract on the growth of root tips. Sci. rep. nat. cent. univ. Nanking, Ser. B, Biol. 2: 51-79.
217. ———, and ———. 1936. Studies on the culture of isolated root tips under sterile conditions. II. Further experiments on the effects of leaf extract on the growth of root tips. Chinese Jour. Exp. Biol. 1: 189-206.
218. Laibach, F. 1935. Über die Auslösung von Kallus- und Wurzelbildung durch  $\beta$ -Indolylessigsäure. Ber. d. bot. Ges. 53: 359-364.
219. Leonian, L. H., and Lilly, V. G. 1937. Is heteroauxin a growth-promoting substance? Am. Jour. Bot. 24: 135-139.
220. Robbins, W. J. 1939. Thiamin and plant growth. Science 89: 303-307.
221. ———. 1940. Response of excised tomato roots to  $\beta$  (-4-methylthiazolyl-5)-alanine. Plant Physiol. 15: 547-552.
222. ———, and Bartley, M. A. 1937. Vitamin B<sub>1</sub> and the growth of excised tomato roots. Science 85: 246-247.
223. ———, and ———. 1937. Thiazole and the growth of excised tomato roots. Proc. Nat. Acad. Sci., Wash., 23: 385-388.
224. ———, and Schmidt, M. B. 1939. Vitamin B<sub>6</sub>, a growth substance for excised tomato roots. Proc. Nat. Acad. Sci., Wash., 25: 1-3.

225. ———, and ———. 1939. Growth of excised tomato roots in a synthetic solution. *Bull. Torrey Bot. Club* 66: 193-200.
226. Schopfer, W. H., et Rytz, W., Jr. 1937. La ouate comme source de facteur de croissance de microorganisme. *Arch. Mikrobiol.* 8: 244-248.
227. Thielman, M. (Tauja-Thielman), u. Pelée, E. 1940. Wachstum isolierter Wurzelspitzen in Heteroauxin enthaltenden Nährlösungen. *Arch. exp. Zellforsch.* 24: 1-26.
228. Thimann, K. V. 1936. Auxins and the growth of roots. *Am. Jour. Bot.* 23: 561-569.
229. ———, and Went, F. W. 1934. On the chemical nature of the root-forming hormone. *Proc. konink. akad. Wetenschappen, Amsterdam*, 37: 3-6.
230. Wehnelt, B. 1927. Untersuchungen über das Wundhormon der Pflanzen. *Jahrb. wiss. Bot.* 66: 773-813.
231. White, P. R. 1937. Vitamin B<sub>3</sub> in the nutrition of excised tomato roots. *Plant Physiol.* 12: 803-811.
232. ———. 1940. Vitamin B<sub>6</sub>, nicotinic acid, pyridine, glycine and thiamin in the nutrition of excised tomato roots. *Am. Jour. Bot.* 27: 811-821.

## NUTRITION—VITAMINS AND HORMONES—ANIMAL

233. Baker, L. E. 1929. The chemical nature of the substances required for cell multiplication. II. Action of glutathione, hemoglobin, and ash of liver on the growth of fibroblasts. *Jour. Exp. Med.* 49: 163-182.
234. ———. 1936. Artificial media for the cultivation of fibroblasts, epithelial cells and monocytes. *Science* 83: 605-606.
235. Vogelaar, J. P. M., and Erlichman, E. 1936. The growth of human fibroblasts in media containing various amounts of thyroxin. *Am. Jour. Cancer* 26: 358-367.
236. ———, and ———. 1937. Significance of ascorbic acid (vitamin C) for the growth *in vitro* of Crocker mouse sarcoma 180. *Am. Jour. Cancer* 31: 283-289.



## PHYSIOLOGY OTHER THAN NUTRITION—PLANT

237. Avery, G. S., and La Rue, C. D. 1938. Growth and tropic responses of excised *Avena* coleoptiles in culture. Bot. Gaz. 100: 186-199.
238. Bennet-Clark, T. A., Greenwood, A. D., and Barker, J. W. 1936. Water relations and osmotic pressures of plant cells. New Phytol. 35: 277-291.
239. Bonner, J., and Buckman, E. R. 1938. Syntheses carried out *in vitro* by isolated pea roots. I. Proc. Nat. Acad. Sci., Wash., 27: 431-438.
240. Cannon, W. A. 1932. Absorption of oxygen by roots when the shoot is in darkness or in light. Plant Physiol. 7: 673-684.
241. Fife, J. M., and Frampton, V. L. 1936. The pH gradient extending from the phloem into the parenchyma of the sugar beet and its relation to the feeding behavior of *Eutettix tenellus*. Jour. Agr. Res. 53: 581-593.
242. Gautheret, R. 1937. Action de la racine sur la survie des cellules isolées de coiffe de *Lupinus albus*. C. r. acad. sci., Paris, 204: 887-889.
243. Grossenbacher, K. A. 1938. Diurnal fluctuation in root pressure. Plant Physiol. 13: 669-676.
244. ———. 1939. Autonomic cycle of rate of exudation of plants. Am. Jour. Bot. 26: 107-109.
245. Haberlandt, G. 1919. Zur Physiologie der Zellteilung. 3. Mitt.: Über Zellteilung nach Plasmolyse. Sitzungsber. kgl. preuss. Akad. Wiss., Berlin, 20: 322-348.
246. Hoagland, D. R., and Broyer, T. C. 1936. General nature of the process of salt accumulation by roots with description of experimental methods. Plant Physiol. 11: 471-507.
247. Lund, E. J. 1931. Electric correlation between living cells in cortex and wood in the Douglas fir. Plant Physiol. 6: 631-652.
248. McClary, J. E. 1940. Synthesis of thiamin by excised roots of maize. Proc. Nat. Acad. Sci., Wash., 26: 581-587.
249. Nagao, M. 1936. Studies on the growth hormones of plants. I. The production of growth substance in root tips. Sci. rep. Tôhoku univ. (Biol.) 10: 721-731.

250. ———. 1937. Studies on the growth hormones of plants. III. The occurrence of growth substance in isolated roots grown under sterilized conditions. Sci. rep. Tôhoku univ. (Biol.) 12: 191-193.
251. ———. 1938. Studies on the growth hormones of plants. IV. Further experiments on the production of growth substance in root tips. Sci. rep. Tôhoku univ. (Biol.) 13: 221-228.
252. Nobécourt, P. 1940. Synthèse de la vitamine B<sub>1</sub> dans des cultures de tissus végétaux. C. r. soc. biol., Paris, 133: 530-532.
253. van Overbeek, J. 1939. Is auxin produced in roots? Proc. Nat. Acad. Sci., Wash., 25: 245-248.
254. ———. 1939. Evidence for auxin production in isolated roots growing *in vitro*. Bot. Gaz. 101: 450-456.
255. ———, and Bonner, J. 1938. Auxin in isolated roots growing *in vitro*. Proc. Nat. Acad. Sci., Wash., 24: 260-264.
256. Plantefol, L. 1938. Sur les échanges respiratoires des tissus végétaux en culture. C. r. acad. sci., Paris, 207: 1121-1123.
257. ———, et Gautheret, R. 1939. La glucose et la respiration des cultures de tissus végétaux. C. r. acad. sci., Paris, 208: 927-929.
258. Robbins, W. J., and Maneval, W. E. 1924. Effect of light on growth of excised root tips under sterile conditions. Bot. Gaz. 78: 424-432.
259. Rosene, H. F. 1937. Distribution of the velocities of absorption of water in the onion root. Plant Physiol. 12: 1-19.
260. ———. 1941. Comparison of rates of water intake in contiguous regions of intact and isolated roots. Plant Physiol. 16: 19-38.
261. Saeger, A. 1933. Gas injury to pure cultures of *Spirodela*. Plant Physiol. 8: 479-480.
262. Steward, F. C., Berry, W. E., and Broyer, T. C. 1936. The absorption and accumulation of solutes by living plant cells. VIII. The effect of oxygen upon respiration and salt accumulation. Ann. Bot. 50: 345-366.

263. Thielman, M., u. Bérzin, L. 1927. Ueber den osmotischen Wert kultivierter Pflanzenzellen. Arch. exp. Zellforsch. 4: 273-327.
264. White, P. R. 1936. Root pressure developed in isolated tomato roots growing *in vitro*. (Abst.) Paper presented before Am. Soc. Plant Physiol., A.A.A.S., December, 1936.
265. ———. 1937. Seasonal fluctuations in growth rates of excised tomato root tips. Plant Physiol. 12: 183-190.
266. ———. 1937. Survival of isolated tomato roots at sub-optimal and supraoptimal temperatures. Plant Physiol. 12: 771-776.
267. ———. 1938. "Root-pressure"—an unappreciated force in sap movement. Am. Jour. Bot. 25: 223-227.
268. ———. 1938. Root-pressure as a factor in the rise of sap. Nature 141: 581-583.
269. ———. 1938. "Root pressure." An unappreciated force in sap movement. Smithsonian Report 1938: 489-497.
270. Zimmerman, P. W. 1930. Oxygen requirements for root growth of cuttings in water. Am. Jour. Bot. 17: 842-861.

## PHYSIOLOGY OTHER THAN NUTRITION—ANIMAL

271. Ebeling, A. H. 1914. The effect of the variation in the osmotic tension and of the dilution of culture media on the cell proliferation of connective tissue. Jour. Exp. Med. 20: 130-139.
272. Warburg, O. 1923. Versuche an überlebenden Karzinomgewebe. Biochem. Ztschr. 142: 317-350.
273. ———. 1926. Über den Stoffwechsel der Tumoren. J. Springer, Berlin.
274. ———, u. Kubowitz, F. 1927. Stoffwechsel wachsender Zellen (Fibroblasten, Herz, Chorion). Biochem. Ztschr. 189: 242-248.

## MORPHOLOGY AND MORPHOGENESIS—PLANTS—GENERAL

275. Behre, K. 1929. Physiologische und zytologische Untersuchungen über *Drosera*. Planta 7: 208-306.
276. Berthelot, A., et Amoureux, G. 1937. Remarques sur l'utilisation des plantules aseptiques pour l'étude de la formation des tumeurs. C. r. acad. sci., Paris, 204: 1360-1362.

277. Bouillenne, R., et Went, F. W. 1933. Recherches expérimentales sur la néoformation des racines dans les plantules et les boutures des plantes supérieures. *Ann. jard. bot. Buitenzorg* 43: 25-202.
278. Carrière, E.-A. 1875. Greffes de Cucurbitacées. *Rev. hort.* 1875: 14-16.
279. Dauphiné, A. 1930. Caractères histologiques de racines développées isolément. *C. r. acad. sci., Paris*, 190: 1318-1320.
280. Delarge, L. 1938. Cultures de méristèmes radiculaires *in vitro*. Les variations individuelles et leur signification physiologiques. *Bull. soc. roy. bot. belg.* 71: 73-88.
281. ———. 1939. Cultures de méristèmes radiculaires *in vitro*. Les milieux réputés complets et les variations individuelles. *Bull. soc. roy. bot. belg.* 71: 145-162.
282. Gautheret, R. 1937. Sur la migration cellulaire dans les cultures d'organes et de tissus végétaux. *C. r. soc. biol., Paris*, 124: 632-634.
283. ———. 1938. Caractères anatomiques de fragments de tubercules de carotte cultivés *in vitro*. *C. r. soc. biol., Paris*, 127: 259-261.
284. ———. 1938. Caractères cytologiques de tranches de tubercules de carotte cultivés *in vitro*. *C. r. soc. biol., Paris*, 127: 609-612.
285. ———. 1939. Sur la mesure de la croissance des tissus de carotte cultivés *in vitro*. *C. r. acad. sci., Paris*, 208: 1340.
286. ———. 1940. Recherches sur le bourgeonnement du tissu cambial d'*Ulmus campestris* cultivé *in vitro*. *C. r. acad. sci., Paris*, 210: 632-634.
287. ———. 1940. Nouvelles recherches sur le bourgeonnement du tissu cambial d'*Ulmus campestris* cultivé *in vitro*. *C. r. acad. sci., Paris*, 210: 744-746.
288. ———. 1940. Recherches expérimentales sur la polarité des tissus du tubercule de Carotte. *C. r. acad. sci., Paris*, 211: 15-18.
289. ———. 1940. Remarques sur la structure des tissus de carotte cultivés *in vitro*. *C. r. soc. biol., Paris*, 134: 237-238.

290. Gioelli, F. 1937. Il differenziamento citologico ed istologico dei meristemi cambiali *in vitro*. (Nota I.) Accad. sci. Ferrara, atti 1937, vol. 14, 2' ser.: 172-174.
291. ———. 1937. Influenza della temperatura e della luce sullo sviluppo dei meristemi cambiali *in vitro*. (Nota II.) Accad. sci. Ferrara, atti 1937, vol. 14, 2' ser.: 175-176.
292. ———. 1938. Morfologia, istologia, fisiologia e fisiopatologia di meristemi secondari *in vitro*. Accad. sci. Ferrara, atti 16: 1-87.
293. Goebel, K. 1908. Einleitung in die experimentelle Morphologie der Pflanzen. pp. 260. Teubner Verlag, Leipzig u. Berlin.
294. Haberlandt, G. 1913. Zur Physiologie der Zellteilung. Sitzungsber. kgl. preuss. Akad. Wiss., Berlin, 16: 318-345.
295. ———. 1914. Zur Physiologie der Zellteilung. Sitzungsber. kgl. preuss. Akad. Wiss., Berlin, 16: 1095-1111.
296. ———. 1919. Zur Physiologie der Zellteilung. 4. Mitt. Sitzungsber. kgl. preuss. Akad. Wiss., Berlin, 39: 721-733.
297. ———. 1920. Zur Physiologie der Zellteilung. 5. Mitt.: Über das Wesen des plasmolytischen Reizes bei Zellteilung nach Plasmolyse. Sitzungsber. kgl. preuss. Akad. Wiss., Berlin, 11: 323-338.
298. Jaeger, M. 1928. Untersuchungen über die Frage des Wachstums und der Entholzung verholzter Zellen. Jahrb. wiss. Bot. 68: 345-379.
299. Klein, G., u. Kisser, J. 1924. Die sterile Kultur der höheren Pflanzen. Bot. Abhandlg. (K. Goebel), Heft. 2: pp. 64.
300. Küster, E. 1911. Die Gallen der Pflanzen. pp. 437. Hirzel Verlag, Leipzig.
301. Lewis, K. H., and McCoy, E. 1933. Root nodule formation on the garden bean, studied by a technique of tissue culture. Bot. Gaz. 95: 316-329.
302. Loeb, J. 1915. Rules and mechanism of inhibition and correlation in the regeneration of *Bryophyllum calycinum*. Bot. Gaz. 60: 249-277.
303. ———. 1916. Further experiments on correlation of growth in *Bryophyllum calycinum*. Bot. Gaz. 62: 293-302.

304. ———. 1917. Influence of the leaf upon root formation and geotropic curvature in the stem of *Bryophyllum calycinum* and the possibility of a hormone theory of these processes. Bot. Gaz. 63: 25-50.
305. ———. 1917. The chemical basis of axial polarity in regeneration. Science 46: 547-551.
306. ———. 1918. Chemical basis of correlation. I. Production of equal masses of shoots by equal masses of sister leaves in *Bryophyllum calycinum*. Bot. Gaz. 65: 150-174.
307. MacDougal, D. T. 1926. Growth and permeability of century-old cells. Am. Nat. 60: 393-415.
308. Naylor, E. E. 1931. The morphology of regeneration of *Bryophyllum calycinum*. Am. Jour. Bot. 19: 32-40.
309. ———, and Johnson, B. 1937. A histological study of vegetative reproduction in *Saintpaulia ionantha*. Am. Jour. Bot. 24: 673-678.
310. ———, and Sperry, J. J. 1938. Vegetative reproduction in *Chlorophytum elatum*. Am. Jour. Bot. 25: 695-699.
311. Nobécourt, P., et Dusseau, A. 1938. Sur la prolifération *in vitro* de fragments de végétaux et la formation de tumeurs aseptiques. Sciences (rev. franç.) 20: 53-56.
312. Okado, Y. 1920. Studien über die Proliferation der Markhöhlzellen im Stengel der *Vicia faba*. Bot. mag., Tokyo, 34: 19-34.
313. Pearsall, W. H., and Priestley, J. H. 1923. Meristematic tissues and protein iso-electric points. New Phytol. 22: 185-191.
314. Priestley, J. H. 1928. The meristematic tissue of the plant. Biol. Rev. 3: 1-20.
315. ———. 1930. Studies in the physiology of cambial activity. III. The seasonal activity of the cambium. New Phytol. 29: 316-354.
316. ———, and Swingle, C. F. 1929. Vegetative propagation from the standpoint of plant anatomy. Tech. Bull. 151, U. S. Dept. Agr., Washington, D. C.
317. Riker, A. J., and Berge, T. O. 1935. Atypical and pathological multiplication of cells approached through studies on crown gall. Am. Jour. Cancer 25: 310-357.
318. Robbins, W. J. 1941. Growth of excised roots and heterosis in tomato. Am. Jour. Bot. 28: 216-225.

319. Rosene, H. F., and Lund, E. J. 1935. Linkage between output of electric energy by polar tissues and cell oxidation. *Plant Physiol.* 10: 27-47.
320. Sachs, J. 1893. Physiologische Notizen. VI. Ueber einige Beziehungen der spezifischen Grösse der Pflanzen zu ihrer Organisation. *Flora* 77: 49-81.
321. Schilling, E. 1915. Über hypertrophische und hyperplastische Gewebewucherungen an Sprossachsen, verursacht durch Paraffine. *Jahrb. wiss. Bot.* 55: 177-258.
322. ———. 1923. Ein Beitrag zur Physiologie der Verholzung und des Wundreizes. *Jahrb. wiss. Bot.* 62: 528-562.
323. Schwanitz, F. 1935. Beiträge zur Analyse der pflanzlichen Polarität. *Beih. bot. Ztrbl.* 54A: 520-530.
324. Sinnott, E. W., and Bloch, R. 1941. Division in vacuolate plant cells. *Am. Jour. Bot.* 28: 225-232.
325. Smith, L. H. 1907. Beobachtungen über Regeneration und Wachstum an isolierten Teilen von Pflanzenembryonen. Diss., Halle.
326. Stingl, G. 1909. Über regenerative Neubildungen an isolierten Blättern phanerogamer Pflanzen. *Flora* 99: 178-192.
327. Tukey, H. B. 1933. Embryo abortion in early-ripening varieties of *Prunus avium*. *Bot. Gaz.* 94: 433-468.
328. ———. 1938. Growth patterns of plants developed from immature embryos in artificial culture. *Bot. Gaz.* 99: 630-665.
329. Vöchting, H. 1878, 1884. Ueber Organbildung im Pflanzenreich. 1. u. 2. Th., Bonn.
330. ———. 1892. Über Transplantation am Pflanzenkörper. Tübingen.
331. ———. 1894. Ueber die durch Pfropfen herbeigeführte Symbiose des *Helianthus tuberosus* und *Helianthus annuus*. *Sitzungsber. kgl. preuss. Akad. Wiss., Berlin*, 1894: 705-721.
332. White, P. R. 1928. Studies on the banana. An investigation of the floral morphology and cytology of certain types of the genus *Musa* L. *Ztschr. Zellforsch. mik. Anat.* 7: 673-733.

333. ———. 1939. Controlled differentiation in a plant tissue culture. Bull. Torrey Bot. Club 66: 507-513.
334. ———. 1942. "Vegetable Staticks" or Evidence concerning cell secretion, root-pressure, and gas diffusion in the functioning and morphogenesis of excised plant tissues. Am. Sci. (Sigma Xi Quart.) 30: 119-136.
335. ———, and Braun, A. C. 1941. Crown gall production by bacteria-free tumor tissues. Science 94: 239-241.
336. ———, and ———. 1942. A cancerous neoplasm of plants produced by autonomous, bacteria-free crown-gall tissue. Proc. Am. Phil. Soc. (In press).
337. ———, and ———. 1942. A cancerous neoplasm of plants: autonomous bacteria-free crown-gall tissue. Cancer Res. 2: 597-617.
338. Wilhelm, A. 1930. Untersuchungen über das Chromogen in *Vicia faba*. Jahrb. wiss. Bot. 72: 203-253.
339. Winkler, H. 1902. Besprechung der Arbeit G. Haberlandt's "Culturversuche mit isolierten Pflanzenzellen." Bot. Ztg. 60(2): 262-264.

MORPHOLOGY AND MORPHOGENESIS—PLANTS—GROWTH  
SUBSTANCES

340. Appleman, C. O. 1918. Special growth-promoting substances and correlation. Science 48: 319-320.
341. Avery, G. S., Burkholder, P. R., and Creighton, H. B. 1937. Production and distribution of growth hormone in shoots of *Aesculus* and *Malus*, and its probable role in stimulating cambial activity. Am. Jour. Bot. 24: 51-58.
342. Bonner, J., and English, J., Jr. 1938. A chemical and physiological study of traumatin, a plant wound hormone. Plant Physiol. 13: 331-348.
343. ———, and Koepfli, J. B. 1939. The inhibition of root growth by auxins. Am. Jour. Bot. 26: 557-566.
344. Boysen-Jensen, P. 1910. Über die Leitung des phototropischen Reizes in *Avena* Keimpflanzen. Ber. d. bot. Ges. 28: 118-120.
345. Cooper, W. C. 1935. Hormones in relation to root formation on stem cuttings. Plant Physiol. 10: 789-794.



346. ———. 1936. Transport of root-forming hormone in woody cuttings. *Plant Physiol.* 11: 779-793.
347. Delisle, A. F. 1937. The influence of auxin on secondary branching in two species of *Aster*. *Am. Jour. Bot.* 24: 159-167.
348. Gardner, F. E., and Marth, P. C. 1937. Parthenocarpic fruits induced by spraying with growth promoting compounds. *Bot. Gaz.* 99: 184-195.
349. Goodwin, R. H. 1937. The role of auxin in leaf development in *Solidago* species. *Am. Jour. Bot.* 24: 43-51.
350. Gustafson, F. G. 1936. Inducement of fruit development by growth-promoting chemicals. *Proc. Nat. Acad. Sci., Wash.*, 22: 628-636.
351. ———. 1938. Further studies on artificial parthenocarp. *Am. Jour. Bot.* 25: 237-244.
352. ———. 1938. Induced parthenocarp. *Bot. Gaz.* 99: 840-844.
353. ———. 1939. The cause of natural parthenocarp. *Am. Jour. Bot.* 26: 135-138.
354. Haberlandt, G. 1921. *Zur Physiologie der Zellteilung.* 6. Mitt.: Über Auslösung von Zellteilung durch Wundhormone. *Sitzungsber. kgl. preuss. Akad. Wiss., Berlin*, 8: 221-234.
355. ———. 1922. Über Zellteilung-Hormone und ihre Beziehung zur Wundheilung, Befruchtung, Parthenogenese und Adventivembryonie. *Biol. Ztbl.* 42: 145-172.
356. Hamner, K. C., and Bonner, J. 1938. Photoperiodism in relation to hormones as factors in floral initiation and development. *Bot. Gaz.* 100: 388-431.
357. Kögl, Fr., Haagen-Smit, A. J., u. Erxleben, H. 1933. Ueber ein Phytohormon der Zellstreckung. 4. Mitteilung über pflanzliche Wachstumsstoffe. Reindarstellung des Auxins aus menschlichen Harn. *Ztschr. physiol. Chem.* 214: 241-261.
358. ———, u. Haagen-Smit, A. J. 1936. Biotin und Aneurin als Phytohormone. *Ztschr. physiol. Chem.* 243: 209-226.
359. Le Fanu, B. 1936. Auxin and correlative inhibition. *New Phytol.* 35: 205-220.

360. Lehmann, E. 1936. Versuche zur Klärung der reziproken Verschiedenheiten von *Epilobium*-Bastarden. I. Der Tatbestand und die Möglichkeit seiner Klärung durch differente Wuchsstoffbildung. Jahrb. Wiss. Bot. 82: 657-668.
361. Melchers, G. 1937. Die Wirkung von Genen, tiefen Temperaturen und blühenden Pfropfpartnern auf die Blühreife von *Hyoscyamus niger* L. Biol. Ztrbl. 57: 568-614.
362. van Overbeek, J. 1935. The growth hormone and the dwarf type of growth in corn. Proc. Nat. Acad. Sci., Wash., 21: 292-299.
363. ———. 1936. "Lazy," an a-geotropic form of maize. Jour. Hered. 27: 93-96.
364. ———. 1938. Auxin production in seedlings of dwarf maize. Plant Physiol. 13: 587-598.
365. ———. 1938. "Laziness" in maize due to abnormal distribution of growth hormone. Jour. Hered. 29: 339-341.
366. ———. 1938. Auxin distribution in seedlings and its bearing on the problem of bud inhibition. Bot. Gaz. 100: 133-166.
367. Paál, A. 1914. Über phototropische Reizleitungen. Ber. d. bot. Ges. 32: 499-502.
368. ———. 1919. Über phototropische Reizleitung. Jahrb. wiss. Bot. 58: 406-458.
369. Reiche, H. 1924. Über Auslösung von Zellteilungen durch Injektion von Gewebesäften und Zelltrümmern. Ztschr. Bot. 16: 241-278.
370. Sachs, J. 1880, 1882. Stoff und Form der Pflanzenorgane. I. u. II. Arb. bot. Inst., Würzburg, 2: 452-488, 689-718.
371. ———. 1893. Physiologische Notizen. VII. Ueber Wachstumsperioden und Bildungsreize. Flora 77: 217-253.
372. Snow, R. 1925. The correlative inhibition of the growth of axillary buds. Ann. Bot. 39: 841-859.
373. ———. 1933. The nature of cambial stimulus. New Phytol. 32: 288-296.
374. ———. 1935. Activation of cambial growth by pure hormones. New Phytol. 34: 347-360.

375. Thimann, K. V. 1936. On the physiology of the formation of nodules on legume roots. *Proc. Nat. Acad. Sci., Wash.*, 22: 511-514.
376. ———, and Koepfli, J. B. 1935. Identity of the growth-promoting and root-forming substances of plants. *Nature* 135: 101-102.
377. ———, and Skoog, F. 1933. Studies on the growth hormone of plants. III. The inhibiting action of the growth substance on bud development. *Proc. Nat. Acad. Sci., Wash.*, 19: 714-716.
378. ———, and ———. 1934. On the inhibition of bud development and other functions of growth substance in *Vicia faba*. *Proc. Roy. Soc., London, B*, 114: 317-339.
379. Went, F. W. 1928. Wuchsstoff und Wachstum. *Rec. trav. bot. néerl.* 25: 1-116.
380. ———. 1929. On a substance causing root formation. *Proc. konink. akad. Wetenschappen, Amsterdam*, 32: 35-39.
381. ———. 1932. Eine botanische Polaritätstheorie. *Jahrb. wiss. Bot.* 76: 528-557.
382. ———. 1938. Specific factors other than auxin affecting growth and root formation. *Plant Physiol.* 13: 55-80.
383. ———. 1941. Plant hormones. *Publ. Am. Assoc. Adv. Sci.*, No. 14; 147-158.
384. Zimmerman, P. W., Crocker, W., and Hitchcock, A. E. 1933. Initiation and stimulation of roots from exposure of plants to carbon monoxide gas. *Contrib. Boyce Thompson Inst.* 5: 1-17.
385. ———, and Hitchcock, A. E. 1935. The response of roots to "root-forming" substances. *Contrib. Boyce Thompson Inst.* 7: 439-445.
386. ———, and Wilcoxon, F. 1935. Several chemical growth substances which cause initiation of roots and other responses in plants. *Contrib. Boyce Thompson Inst.* 7: 209-229.

## MORPHOLOGY AND MORPHOGENESIS—ANIMAL

387. Brachet, J. 1937. Some oxidative properties of isolated amphibian germinal vesicles. *Science* 86: 225.

388. ———, and Shapiro, H. 1938. The relative oxygen consumption of dorsal and ventral regions of intact amphibian gastrulae, including observations on unfertilized eggs. *Jour. Cell. & Comp. Physiol.* 10: 133-146.
389. Ebeling, A. H. 1924. Action de l'épithélium thyroïdien en cultures pures sur la croissance des fibroblastes. *C. r. soc. biol., Paris*, 90: 1449-1452.
390. ———. 1925. A pure strain of thyroid cells and its characteristics. *Jour. Exp. Med.* 41: 337-346.
391. ———, and Fischer, A. 1922. Mixed cultures of pure strains of fibroblasts and epithelial cells. *Jour. Exp. Med.* 36: 285-290.
392. Fell, H. B. 1928. The development *in vitro* of the isolated otocyst of the embryonic fowl. *Arch. exp. Zellforsch.* 7: 69-81.
393. ———. 1928. Experiments on the differentiation *in vitro* of cartilage and bone. Part I. *Arch. exp. Zellforsch.* 7: 390-412.
394. ———. 1931. Osteogenesis *in vitro*. *Arch. exp. Zellforsch.* 11: 245-252.
395. ———. 1931. The osteogenic capacity *in vitro* of periosteum and endosteum isolated from the limb skeleton of fowl embryos and young chicks. *Jour. Anat.* 66: 157-180.
396. ———. 1932. Chondrogenesis in cultures of endosteum. *Proc. Roy. Soc., London, B*, 112: 417-427.
397. ———, and Canti, R. G. 1934. Experiments on the development *in vitro* of the avian knee-joint. *Proc. Roy. Soc., London, B*, 116: 316-350.
398. ———, and Landauer, W. 1935. Experiments on skeletal growth and development *in vitro* in relation to the problem of avian phocomelia. *Proc. Roy. Soc., London, B*, 118: 133-154.
399. ———, and Robison, R. 1929. The growth, development and phosphatase activity of embryonic avian femora and limb-buds cultivated *in vitro*. *Biochem. Jour.* 23: 767-784.
400. ———, and ———. 1930. The development and phosphatase activity *in vivo* and *in vitro* of the mandibular skeletal tissue of the embryonic fowl. *Biochem. Jour.* 24: 1905-1921.

401. ———, and ———. 1934. The development of the calcifying mechanism in avian cartilage and osteoid tissue. *Biochem. Jour.* 28: 2243-2253.
402. Filatow, D. 1925. Ersatz des linsenbildenden Epithels von *Rana esculenta* durch Bauchepithel von *Bufo vulgaris*. *Arch. entw.-mech. Org.* 105: 475-482.
403. Fischer, A. 1922. A three months old strain of epithelium. *Jour. Exp. Med.* 35: 367-372.
404. ———. 1922. A pure strain of cartilage cells *in vitro*. *Jour. Exp. Med.* 36: 379-384.
405. ———. 1922. Cultures of organized tissues. *Jour. Exp. Med.* 36: 393-397.
406. ———. 1925. Sur la transformation *in vitro* des gros leucocytes mononucléaires en fibroblastes. *C. r. soc. biol., Paris*, 92: 109-112.
407. ———. 1926. Umwandlung von Fibroblasten zu Makrophagen *in vitro*. *Arch. exp. Zellforsch.* 3: 345-352.
408. ———. 1929. Ueber Charakter- und Spezifitätskonstanz der Gewebezellen. *Arch. ges. Physiol. Menschen. Tiere* 223: 163-170.
409. ———. 1930. Regeneration. Versuche an Gewebekulturen *in vitro*. *Virchow's Arch. path. Anat.* 279: 94-136.
410. ———. 1931. Proliferation und Differenzierung der Gewebezellen *in vitro*. *Protoplasma* 14: 307-319.
411. ———, u. Parker, R. C. 1929. Proliferation und Differenzierung. *Arch. exp. Zellforsch.* 8: 297-324.
412. Gilchrist, F. G. 1928. The effect of a horizontal temperature gradient on the development of the egg of the Urodele, *Triturus torosus*. *Physiol. Zoöl.* 1: 231-268.
413. Harrison, R. G. 1904. Experimentelle Untersuchungen über die Entwicklung der Sinnesorgane der Seitenlinie bei den Amphibien. *Arch. mik. Anat.* 63: 35-149.
414. ———. 1910. The outgrowth of the nerve fiber as a mode of protoplasmic movement. *Jour. Exp. Zoöl.* 9: 787-848.
415. ———. 1912. The cultivation of tissues in extraneous media as a method of morphogenetic study. *Anat. Rec.* 6: 181-193.
416. ———. 1933. Some difficulties of the determination problem. *Am. Nat.* 67: 306-321.

417. Huxley, J. S. 1926. Modification of development by means of temperature gradients. *Anat. Rec.* 34: 126-127.
418. ———. 1927. Modification of development by means of temperature gradients. *Arch. entw.-mech. Org.* 112: 480-516.
419. Lewis, W. H. 1935. Rat malignant cells in roller tube cultures and some results. *Carnegie Inst., Wash., Publ. No. 459, Contrib. Embryol.* 25: 161-172.
420. Maximow, A. 1925. Tissue cultures of young mammalian embryos. *Carnegie Inst., Wash., Publ. No. 361, Contrib. Embryol.* 16: 47-113.
421. Parker, R. C. 1931. Structural and functional variations of fibroblasts in pure cultures. *Science* 73: 401-402.
422. ———. 1932. The functional characteristics of nine races of fibroblasts. *Science* 76: 219-220.
423. ———. 1932. The stability of functionally distinct races of fibroblasts. *Science* 76: 446-447.
424. ———. 1932. The races that constitute the group of common fibroblasts. I. The effect of blood plasma. *Jour. Exp. Med.* 55: 713-734.
425. ———. 1933. The races that constitute the group of common fibroblasts. II. The effect of blood serum. *Jour. Exp. Med.* 58: 97-113.
426. ———. 1933. The races that constitute the group of common fibroblasts. III. Differences determined by origin of explant and age of donor. *Jour. Exp. Med.* 58: 401-414.
427. ———. 1934. Studies on organogenesis. I. The ability of isolated blood cells to form organized vessels *in vitro*. *Jour. Exp. Med.* 60: 351-359.
428. ———. 1936. The cultivation of large quantities of adult tissue in fluid media. *Science* 83: 579-581.
429. ———. 1936. The cultivation of tissues for prolonged periods in single flasks. *Jour. Exp. Med.* 64: 121-130.
430. Schotté, O. 1932. Xenoplastic inductions. (Abst.) *Anat. Rec.* 54 (suppl.): 30.
431. Spemann, H. 1936. Experimentelle Beiträge zu einer Theorie der Entwicklung. *J. Springer, Berlin.*

432. ———, u. Geinitz, B. 1927. Ueber Weckung organisatorischer Fähigkeiten durch Verpflanzung in organisatorische Umgebung. Arch. entw.-mech. Org. 109: 129–175.
433. Virchow, R. 1858. Die Cellularpathologie in ihrer Begründung auf physiologische und pathologische Gewebelehre. Berlin.
434. Vogt, W. 1932. Einige Ergebnisse aus Versuchen mit halbseitiger Temperaturhemmung am Amphibienkeim. Rev. suisse zool. 39: 309–324.
435. Weiss, P. 1935. The so-called organizer and the problem of organization in amphibian development. Physiol. Rev. 15: 639–674.

## PATHOLOGY—PLANT

436. Braun, A. C., and White, P. R. 1942. Bacteriological sterility of tissues derived from secondary crown-gall tumors. Phytopath. 33: 85–100.
437. Stanley, W. M. 1938. Aucuba mosaic virus protein isolated from diseased, excised tomato roots grown *in vitro*. Jour. Biol. Chem. 126: 125–131.
438. White, P. R. 1934. Multiplication of the viruses of tobacco and aucuba mosaic in growing excised tomato roots. Phytopath. 24: 1003–1011.
439. ———. 1936. The cultivation of plant disease viruses in actively growing excised plant organs *in vitro*. Proc. 2nd Int. Congress Microbiol., London, pp. 30–31.

## PATHOLOGY—ANIMAL

440. Rivers, T. M., Haagen, E., and Muckenfuss, R. S. 1929. Development in tissue cultures of the intracellular changes characteristic of vaccinal and herpetic infections. Jour. Exp. Med. 50: 665–672.
441. ———, ———, and ———. 1929. A study of vaccinal immunity in tissue cultures. Jour. Exp. Med. 50: 673–685.
442. ———, and Ward, S. M. 1935. Jennerian prophylaxis by means of intradermal injections of culture vaccine virus. Jour. Exp. Med. 62: 549–560.

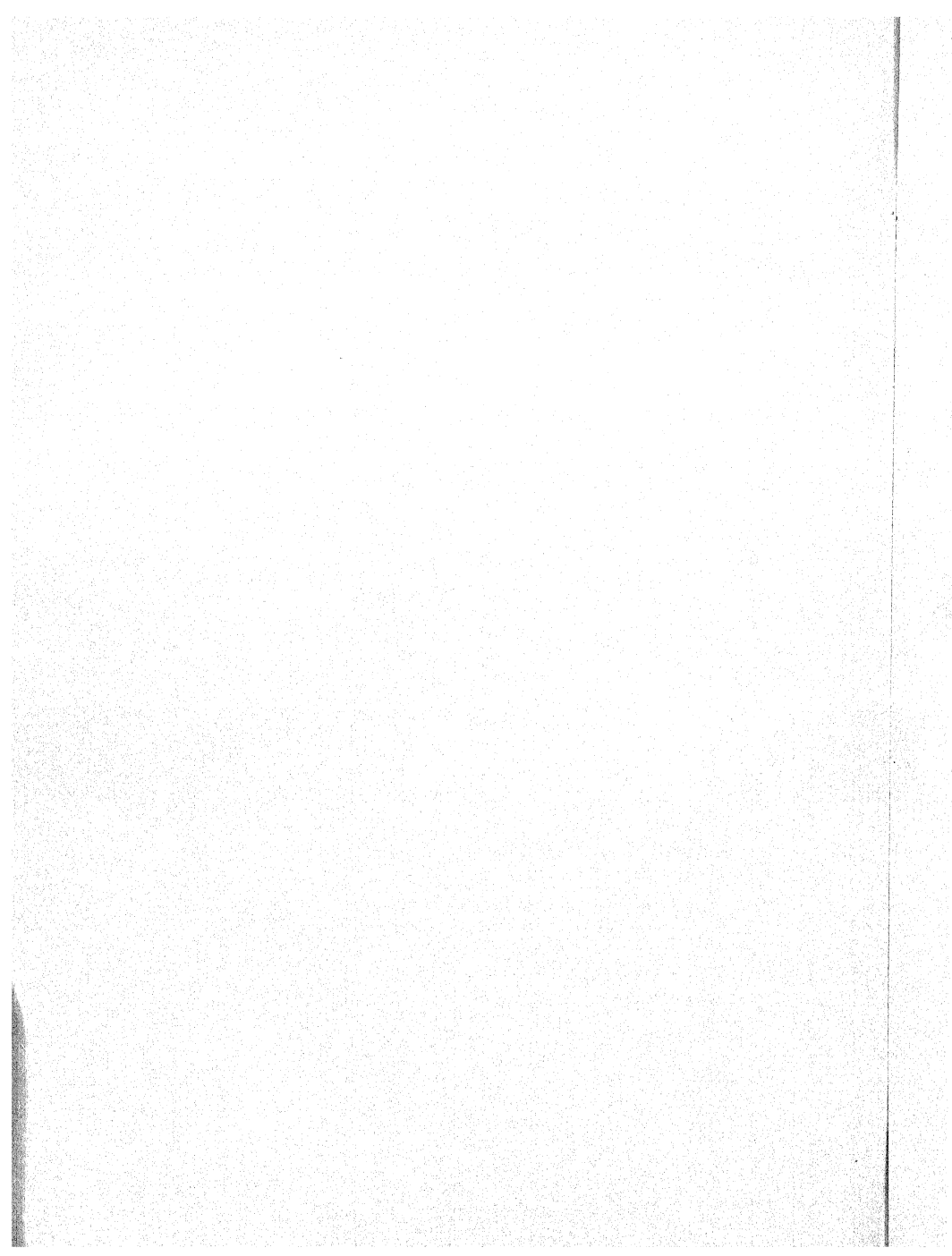
## MISCELLANEOUS—PLANT

443. Clark-Kennedy, A. E. 1929. Stephen Hales, D.D., F.R.S. An eighteenth century biography Cambridge Univ. Press, London.
444. Johnson, D. S. 1912. Studies of the development of the Piperaceae. II. The structure and seed development of *Peperomia hispida*. Am. Jour. Bot. 1: 357-397.
445. MacDougal, D. T., and Shreve, F. 1924. Growth in trees and massive organs of plants. Carnegie Inst., Wash., Publ. No. 350.
446. Mason, T. G., and Phillis, E. 1939. Experiments on the extraction of sap from the vacuole of the leaf of the cotton plant and their bearing on the osmotic theory of water absorption by the cell. Ann. Bot. 3: 531-544.
447. Mueller, J. H. 1935. Methionine as an impurity in natural leucine preparations. Science 81: 50-51.
448. Nobécourt, P. 1939. Sur les radicelles naissant des cultures de tissus du tubercule de carotte. C. r. soc. biol., Paris, 130: 1271-1272.
449. Palladin, V. I. 1926. Plant physiology. (Edited by B. E. Livingston.) 3rd ed. Blakiston's, Philadelphia.
450. Pfeiffer, H. 1933. Ueber das Migrationsvermögen pflanzlicher Zellen *in situ* und *in vitro*. Arch. exp. Zellforsch. 14: 152-170.
451. Prát, S. 1927. The toxicity of tissue juices for cells of the tissue. Am. Jour. Bot. 14: 120-125.
452. Richards, O. W. 1936. Killing organisms with chromium as from incompletely washed bichromate-sulfuric-acid cleaned glassware. Physiol. Zoöl. 9: 246-253.
453. Theophrastus. Ca. 400 B.C. Enquiry into plants. (In: Loeb classical library. G. P. Putnam's Sons, New York. 1923.)
454. Thimann, K. V., and Skoog, F. 1940. The extraction of auxin from plant tissues. Am. Jour. Bot. 27: 951-960.
455. Wilson, J. K. 1915. Calcium-hypochlorite as a seed sterilizer. Am. Jour. Bot. 2: 420-427.



MISCELLANEOUS—ANIMAL

- 456. Ebeling, A. H. 1921. Measurement of the growth of tissues *in vitro*. Jour. Exp. Med. 34: 231-243.
- 457. Vogelaar, J. P. M., and Erlichman, E. 1939. Contributions to tissue culture technic. Am. Jour. Cancer 35: 510-520.



## INDEX

Author names are in **black face type**, plant and animal names in *italics*. Page references in **black face type** indicate bibliography, while those in *italics* indicate illustrations.

### A

- Abies lasiocarpa*, 55  
*Abies pectinata*, cambium, cultures of, 127  
 abscission, auxin a factor in, 210  
*Acer pseudoplatanus*, grafts in cambium cultures, 213  
 achenes, sterilization of, 118  
 acid, ascorbic, 99  
 acid, boric, 103, 104, 105  
 acid, chromic (see potassium dichromate)  
 acid, humic, 56  
 acid, indole-acetic, effects on growth, 98, 105, 179, 182, 186-188, 194, 202  
 acid, nicotinic, 97, 98, 100, 103, 104, 105  
 acid, sulfuric, as nutrient, 105 (see also cleaning solution, 71)  
 acids, amino (see amino-acids)  
 Addicott, 203, 241; A. and Bonner, J., 97, 241; Bonner, J., and A., 34, 57, 93, 100, 131, 185, 230  
 adventitious embryos, origin and cultivation of, 220  
 adventitious roots, 50, 88, 120  
 aeration, effect on differentiation, 194  
 aeration, effect on geotropic response, 192  
 aeration, requirements of roots, 56  
*Aesculus*, 252  
 agar, 102, 104, 105  
 air-conditioning, of culture and transfer rooms, 74, 77  
 alanine, 31  
 alcohol, for cleaning glassware, 71  
 alcohol lamps for flaming instruments, 83  
 alcohol sterilization of tissues, 119  
 algae, growth in stock salt solutions, 104  
*Allium*, 28  
 amino-acids, 93, 99, 100  
 amino-nitrogen, as measure of growth, 156  
 Amoureux; Berthelot and A., 199, 247  
 amphibian embryos, 14, 15  
 animal tissue cultures, 21-30  
*Antirrhinum*, cultures of seed primordia, 206  
 apical dominance, in roots, 55  
 aposporous embryos, 220  
 apple seeds, aseptic removal of, 118  
 Appleman, 211, 252  
 area of cultures, measurement of, 158  
 Arnold sterilizer, 69, 107  
 Arnon, 70, 93, 236; A. and Stout, 70, 93, 237; Stout and A., 70, 93, 237; Hoagland and A., 70, 237  
 ascorbic acid, 99  
 asepsis, 117 et seq.  
 asparagin, 31  
*Aspidium*, 28  
 atmospheric humidity, 134

- aucuba mosaic virus, 201  
 autoclave, 68  
 autonomy of cells, 4  
 auxin, effects of, 210-212  
*Avena*, 252  
*Avena* coleoptiles, 219  
 Avery and La Rue, 50, 245; A., Burkholder, and Creighton, 211, 252; La Rue and A., 45, 233  
 Axtman; Bonner, J., and A., 98, 242
- B**
- bacterial digestion of fibrin, 101  
 bacteriological contaminations, 74, 83, 121  
 bacteriologist's hood, for transfers, 74  
 Baker, 22, 90, 101, 240, 244; B. and Carrel, 22, 90, 240, 241; Carrel and B., 22, 90, 241  
 baker's yeast, 101  
 balances, 71  
 bark, removal for cultivation, 115, 122  
 Barker; Bennet-Clark, Greenwood, and B., 94, 245  
 Bartley; Robbins and B., 35, 95, 96, 97, 133, 157, 185, 239, 243; Robbins, B., and White, V. B., 35, 231; Robbins, White, V. B., McClary, and B., 93, 237 (see also Robbins and Schmidt [Schmidt-Bartley] 35, 95, 133, 157, 158, 185, 232, 243, 244)  
 bean pods, aseptic seeds from, 118  
 bean pods, use in testing wound substances, 57, 114  
 beech, cambium cultures from, 123  
*Begonia*, 28, 125  
 Behre, 47, 50, 247  
 belly epithelium of toad, 15  
 Bennet-Clark, Greenwood, and Barker, 94, 245  
 Berge; Riker and B., 199, 250  
 Berkefeld filters, 107  
 Berry; Steward, B., and Broyer, 56, 246  
 Berthelot, 93, 104, 237; B. and Amoureux, 199, 247  
 Berthelot's solution, 104  
 Bérziñ; Thielman and B., 94, 247  
*Beta vulgaris*, 19  
 biotin, 99  
 Blakeslee; van Overbeek, Conklin, and B., 27, 220  
 Bloch; Sinnott and B., 58, 126, 251  
 blood as a nutrient, 10  
 blood plasma, 21, 22, 90  
 Bloom, 228  
 Bobiloff-Preisner, 28, 234  
*Bocconia*, 27  
 Bonner, D.; Bonner, J., and B., 99, 242  
 Bonner, J., 34, 96, 97, 105, 125, 132, 185, 234, 242; B. and Addicott, 34, 57, 93, 131, 185, 230; B. and Axtman, 98, 242; B. and Bonner, D., 99, 242; B. and Buckman, 97, 245; B. and Devirian, 97, 242; B. and English, 57, 114, 126, 252; B. and Koepfli, 187, 188, 252; Addicott and B., 97, 98, 241; Hamner and B., 212, 253; van Overbeek and B., 99, 246  
 Börger, 28, 58, 228, 234  
 boric acid, 103, 104, 105  
 boron, 70, 92  
 Bouillenne, M.; Bouillenne, B., and B., 212, 242  
 Bouillenne, B., and Bouillenne, M., 212, 242; B. and Went, 210, 248  
 Boysen-Jensen, 210, 212, 219, 252  
 Brachet, 218, 255; B. and Shapiro, 218, 256  
 branches, effect on measurements of roots, 160  
 branching habit, auxin a factor in, 211

- brass rings, as culture chambers, 81, 149  
*Brassica*, 28  
*Brassica nigra*, apical dominance in roots, 55  
*Brassica rapa*, 19  
**Braun and White, P. R.**, 221, 259; **White, P. R.**, and **B.**, 52, 124, 221, 252  
 brewer's yeast, 101  
 "Brewer's yeast—Harris," 101  
 bromine, as sterilizing agent, 118, 119  
 brown sugar, 95  
**Broyer; Hoagland and B.**, 56, 245; **Steward, Berry, and B.**, 56, 246  
*Eryophyllum*, 28, 125  
*Bryophyllum calycinum*, 249, 250  
**Buckman; Bonner, J.**, and **B.**, 97, 245  
 buckwheat roots, 63, 64, 105  
 bud cultures, 151  
 buffering effect of complex nutrients, 186  
*Bufo vulgaris*, 15, 257  
**Burkholder; Avery, B.**, and **Creighton**, 211, 252  
**Burlet**, 118, 228, 242; **Geiger-Huber and B.**, 98, 187, 243  
**Burrows**, 21, 22, 35, 131, 235, 236; **Carrel and B.**, 22, 236
- C
- calcium, 92, 96, 185  
 calcium hypochlorite, 119  
 calcium nitrate, 103, 104, 105  
 calcium sulfate, 105  
 callus "blasen," 194, 206  
 callus cultures, 52, 53, 99, 105  
 "calots," 66  
 cambial activity, initiation and control by auxin, 211  
 cambium cultures, 33, 36, 116  
 cambium cultures, isolation of, 115, 121, 122  
 cambiums, 48–50 (see also, meristems)  
*Camptosorus*, 48, 125  
 cancer, 2  
**Cannon**, 56, 245  
**Canti; Fell and C.**, 256  
 carbohydrate, 57, 93, 94–96  
 carbon, 92  
 carboys, Pyrex, 69  
**Carrel**, 21, 22, 26, 35, 71, 75, 90, 131, 183, 228, 236, 241; **C. and Baker**, 22, 90, 241; **C. and Burrows**, 22, 236; **Baker and C.**, 22, 90, 240, 241  
 Carrel flasks, 80  
**Carrière**, 13, 248  
 carrot, 49, 99  
 carrot, cultures from 105, 124  
 caulocaline, 212, 217  
 cell theory, 4, 35  
 cellular reactions, 193–194  
 cellular totipotency, 4–8  
 celluloid rule, for measuring roots, 123, 161  
 cereals, roots, cultivation of, 199  
**Chambers**, 33, 131, 148, 151, 231  
 chemotropic response, 192  
 chlorides, 112  
 chlorine, 92  
 chlorine, as sterilizing agent, 119  
*Chlorophytum*, 125  
*Chlorophytum elatum*, 250  
 chromel wire loops, 82, 85  
 chromic acid (see potassium dichromate)  
 "chymical implements," 66  
*Citrus*, fruits, aposporous embryos in, 220  
 "clarite," 151  
**Clark-Kennedy**, 260  
 cleaning procedures, for glassware, 71, 72  
 cleaning solutions, 69, 71  
 clones, importance of, 132  
 clover roots, cultures of, 40, 105  
 clover roots, dominance in, 55  
 clover roots, root cap, 61  
 coagulants, 101, 102  
 cobalt chloride, 105  
 coconut milk, as a nutrient, 27  
 colchicine, effects on carrot cultures, 202

- coleoptile, *Avena*, transplantation of, 219  
*Coleus*, 28  
*Coleus arifolia*, 19  
 colony shape, 133, 158  
 commercial sugar (see sucrose)  
 companion cells, phloem, meristematic character of, 58  
*Compositae*, bud formation on roots, 47, 51  
 concentration gradients, 217  
**Conklin; van Overbeek, C., and Blakeslee**, 27  
 contaminations, 74, 83, 121  
 convection currents, 74  
**Cooper**, 210, 212, 252, 253  
 copper, 96  
 copper sulfate, 105  
 cortical tissues, retention of meristematic function by, 43, 58  
*Corydalis solida*, 6  
 cotton plugs, 73  
 cotyledons, regeneration in, 47  
 cover glasses, 150, 151  
*Crassula*, 28  
**Creighton; Avery, Burkholder, and C.**, 211, 252  
 criteria of response to external influences, 184-194  
**Crocker; Zimmerman, C., and Hitchcock**, 255  
 crocks for cleaning solution, 71  
 crown gall, 199, 209, 221  
 crown-gall tissue, cultivation of, 53, 124, 216  
 cucumber mosaic virus, 200  
*Cucurbita*, 28  
 culture conditions, 144 et seq.  
 culture period, length of, 142, 143  
 culture rooms, 76  
 culture techniques, 131 et seq.  
 curvature, tropic, effect of auxin on, 212  
*Cuscuta*, 202  
 cuttings, development of roots on, 88, 121  
 cyclosis, 194  
 cystein-HCl, 105  
 cystoscopic scissors, 83  
 cytology, 202  
**Czech**, 28, 234
- D
- Dakin solution, 119  
 dandelion root, polarity and bud formation, 51  
*Datura*, 27, 220  
*Daucus*, 28  
**Dauphiné**, 47, 203, 234, 248  
**Day**, 98, 242  
**Delarge**, 133, 248  
**Delisle**, 211, 253  
**Demuth; Fischer and D.**, 22, 90, 101, 241  
 developmental patterns, 210-219  
 deviation from norm, growth rates of cultures, 163-165  
**Devirian; Bonner, J., and D.**, 97, 98, 242  
 dextrin, 95  
 dextrose, 32, 105, 107  
 diameter of roots, 159  
 diastase, digestion products as nutrients, 31  
*Dicranum*, 28  
**Dietrich**, 45, 233  
 differentiation, as affected by oxygen supply, 194, 223, 226  
 digests, peptic, of fibrin, 90  
 diphtheria bacilli, 156  
 disaccharides, 95  
 distilled water, 69, 70, 92  
 diurnal rhythms, of water secretion and of respiration, 190  
 dominance, 55, 136, 159  
**Drew**, 22, 90, 237, 238  
*Drosera*, 247  
 drupes, sterilization of, 118  
 dry weights, as measure of growth, 143, 157  
**Duhamet**, 99, 187, 202, 242  
**Dusseau; Nobécourt and D.**, 34, 199, 250  
 dwarfness, auxin a factor in, 211
- E
- Ebeling**, 22, 29, 90, 96, 133, 158, 240, 247, 256, 261; **E. and Fischer**, 29, 30, 256

- egg, fertilized, as meristem, 44  
 egg cells, cultivation of, 45, 219  
*Eichhornia crassipes*, 20  
 electropotential gradient, 217  
 electrostatic potential, 218  
 elementary organism, 4, 29  
 "elixir proprietatis," 66  
 embryo juice as nutrient, 22, 27, 90  
 embryogeny, 218, 219  
 embryological watch glasses, 81, 130, 132  
 embryology, experimental, 219  
 embryos, adventitious, 220  
 embryos, amphibian, 14, 15  
 embryos, plant, 45-47  
 embryos, undifferentiated, 46, 47  
 endodermis, meristematic character of, 43  
 endosperm, abortive, 45, 220  
 endosperm, liquid, as nutrient, 27  
 energy sources, 94-96  
**English; Bonner, J., and E.**, 57, 114, 125, 126, 252  
**Ephrussi**, 228  
 epicotyl, proliferative capacity of, 48  
 epidermal tissue, meristematic character of, 44  
 epidermis, cultivation of, 28  
*Epilobium*, 254  
 epithelial cells, animal, in culture, 29  
 epithelium, 2, 30  
 epithelium, belly of toad, 15  
 epithelium, glandular, of kidney, 2  
 epithelium, of iris, 2  
**Erdmann**, 228  
 erect habit, auxin as a factor in, 211  
**Erlichman**, 90, 238; **Vogelaar and E.**, 22, 71, 90, 91, 239, 244  
 errors of measurement, 162 et seq.  
**Erxleben; Kögl, Haagen-Smit, and E.**, 212, 253  
**Essenbeck and Suessenguth**, 45, 233  
 ether-alcohol, for cleaning cover glasses, 150  
 ethyl-methacrylate, 151  
*Eutettix tenellus*, 245  
 excised roots, early cultivation of, 31-36  
 excision procedures, 87, 88  
 exudate, phloem, toxicity of, 27  
 eye-cup, of frog, 15
- F
- Fell**, 131, 132, 184, 256; **F. and Canti**, 132, 256; **F. and Landauer**, 132, 256; **F. and Robinson**, 132, 256, 257  
 ferric chloride, 109  
 ferric nitrate, 109  
 ferric sulfate, 103, 105, 106, 108, 109, 180, 181  
 ferric tartrate, 105  
 fertilized egg cells, as material for morphogenetic study, 218-219  
 fertilized egg cells, meristematic character of, 44  
 fibrin digests, as nutrients, 90, 101  
 fibroblasts, apparent loss of totipotency in, 29, 30  
**Fiedler**, 34, 95, 99, 100, 102, 131, 159, 187, 192, 229, 231  
**Fife and Frampton**, 218, 245  
**Filatow**, 15, 30, 257  
 fir, white, 55  
**Fischer**, 29, 30, 210, 229, 257; **F. and Demuth**, 22, 90, 101, 241; **F. and Parker**, 143, 210, 257; **Ebeling and F.**, 29, 30, 256  
 flaming of tubes, practice, 76, 83  
 flasks, Carrel, 80, 81  
 flasks, culture, 131  
 flax roots, 105  
 floating of roots, importance of, 140  
 flower-forming hormones, 212  
 foliar leaf, differentiation of, 2  
 form, origin of, 1, 2, 11, 12  
**Frampton; Fife and F.**, 218, 245  
*Fraxinus Ornus*, 19  
 frog tissues, 14, 15, 21

fructose, 94  
 fruits, fleshy, membranaceous  
 and woody, aseptic seeds from,  
 118  
 function, origin of, 1, 2, 11, 12  
 fungi, as parasites on tissue cul-  
 tures, 199  
 fungoid growth of cambium cul-  
 tures, 123

## G

galactose, 95  
**Galligar**, 34, 231, 239  
 ganglia, nerve fibers from, 209  
**Gardner** and **Marth**, 211, 253  
 gas, toxicity of, 75, 76  
 gas interchange as a morpho-  
 genetic factor, 192, 194  
**Gautheret**, 33, 34, 36, 38, 49, 50,  
 96, 99, 102, 104, 105, 116, 122,  
 123, 127, 144, 148, 158, 184,  
 203, 213, 221, 229, 231, 232,  
 234, 242, 245, 248; **Plantefol**  
 and **G.**, 189, 246  
**Geiger-Huber**, 98, 187, 243; **G.**  
 and **Burlet**, 98, 187, 243  
**Geinitz**; **Spemann** and **G.**, 259  
 gelatine, 102  
 "gelose," 104  
 gemmae, stipular, of *Marattia*,  
 125  
 gene mechanism, 30  
 genes, auxin in relation to, 211  
 genetic constitution and stabil-  
 ity, 132  
 geotropic response, 192, 210  
**Gey**, **G. O.**, 131, 146, 236; **G.** and  
**Gey**, **M. C.**, 146, 236  
**Gey**, **M. C.**; **Gey**, **G. O.**, and **G.**,  
 146, 236  
**Gilchrist**, 218, 257  
**Gioelli**, 122, 199, 203, 249  
 glandular function of roots, 189,  
 190  
 glandular hairs, cultivation of,  
 20  
 glassware, 79 et seq.  
 glucenium sulfate, 105  
 glucose, 31, 94

glycine, 31, 99, 103, 104, 105, 106  
 glyocoll (see glycine)  
**Goebel**, 6, 7, 217, 249  
**Goodwin**, 211, 253  
 gourds, 13  
 grafting, 7, 13, 14, 15  
 grafts, *in vitro*, 33, 213  
 granulation of wounds, 2  
 grasses, meristems of, 48  
**Greene**, 224, 225  
**Greenwood**; **Bennet-Clark**, **G.**,  
 and **Barker**, 94, 245  
**Grossenbacher**, 190, 245  
 growth, distribution of, in the  
 body, 10, 11  
 growth, restrictions on, 10  
 growth habit, 57, 142  
 growth measurements, 154 et  
 seq.  
 growth rates, 57, 141  
 Gruenewald scissors, 82  
 guard cells, loss of proliferative  
 capacity, 44  
**Guilliermond**, 33  
**Gustafson**, 210, 253  
 Gymnosperms, sterilization of  
 seeds, 118

## H

**Haagen**; **Rivers**, **H.**, and  
**Muckenfuss**, 184, 259  
**Haagen-Smit**; **Kögl** and **H.**, 99,  
 253; **Kögl**, **H.**, and **Erxleben**,  
 212, 253  
**Haberlandt**, 8, 9, 10, 16, 18, 20,  
 21, 27, 28, 30, 31, 32, 33, 35,  
 44, 100, 126, 184, 234, 245,  
 249, 253  
 hairs, glandular, stamen and  
 stinging, cultivation of, 20  
 hairs, root, 62, 63  
**Hales**, 66  
**Hamner** and **Bonner**, **J.**, 212,  
 253  
 hanging-drop cultures, 148, 149,  
 151 et seq.  
 hanging-drop cultures, equip-  
 ment, 130, 149 et seq.  
**Hannig**, 45, 233



- Harris yeast, 101  
**Harrison**, 9, 14, 21, 23, 30, 35,  
 90, 131, 183, 209, 210, 219,  
 229, 236, 257  
**Heidt**, 33, 231  
*Helianthus annuus*, 251  
*Helianthus tuberosus*, 251  
 heterologous grafts, 221  
 heterosis, 220  
 Heyman scissors, 82  
 histograms, use of, 175  
 histology, 202, 203  
**Hitchcock; Zimmerman and H.**,  
 255; **Zimmerman, Crocker,**  
 and **H.**, 255  
**Hoagland and Arnon**, 70, 237;  
**H. and Broyer**, 56, 245  
 hollow-ground slides, 130, 149  
 homologous grafts, 221  
 hood, bacteriological, 74  
 hood, chemical, 77  
 hormones, 93, 96, 210-212  
**Hort**, 42  
 humic acid, 56  
**Huxley**, 218, 258  
 hybrid peaches, 45  
 hybrid tomatoes, 220  
 hydrogen-ion gradients, 217  
 hydrostatic gradients, 217  
 hydrostatic potential, 218  
 hydrostatic pressure, 190  
*Hyoscyamus niger*, 254  
 hyperhydric enlargement, 206  
 hypocotyl, proliferative capacity  
 of, 47  
 hypotheses, working, 3
- I
- immature ovules, cultivation of,  
 58  
 immersion heater, 83  
 implements, 82 et seq., 85  
 incompatibility, 220  
 increment rates, 155 et seq.  
 indole-acetic acid, 98, 105, 179,  
 182, 186-188, 194, 202  
 innervated cells, 209  
 inoculation procedures, 138 et  
 seq.  
 insect galls, 126
- insolation, danger from, 144  
 intercalary meristems, 48, 49,  
 124, 151  
 intumescences, 114  
 iodine, 92  
 iodine, effects of deficiency, 188  
 iridectomy scissors, 82  
 iris, epithelium, 2  
 iron, 92  
 iron, effects on growth, 180, 181  
 iron, optimal concentrations of,  
 185  
 iron chloride, 109  
 iron nitrate, 109  
 iron sulfate, 103, 105, 106, 109,  
 180, 181  
 iron tartrate, 105  
 isopleth diagrams, use of, 176  
 isotonicity, 94
- J
- Jaeger**, 43, 48, 249  
 Jensen's No. 16 virus, 202  
**Johnson, B.; Naylor and J.**, 44  
 125, 250  
**Johnson, D. S.**, 34, 46, 47, 260  
 juvenile cells, 48
- K
- Kalanchoë*, 28  
**Kemmer**, 28, 234  
**Kisser; Klein and K.**, 118, 249  
**Klein and Kisser**, 118, 249  
 Knop's solution, 31, 104  
**Knudson**, 32, 234, 239; **K. and**  
**Smith, R. S.**, 32, 239  
**Koepfli; Bonner, J., and K.**, 188,  
 252; **Thimann and K.**, 210,  
 255  
**Kögl and Haagen-Smit**, 99, 253;  
**K., Haagen-Smit, and Erxle-**  
**ben**, 212, 253  
 kohl-rabi, cultivation of tissues  
 of, 124  
**Kotte**, 31, 32, 33, 34, 35, 36, 37,  
 56, 94, 100, 101, 131, 192, 231  
**Krontowski**, 229  
**Kubowitz; Warburg and K.**,  
 184, 247  
**Kunkel**, 28, 234  
**Küster**, 28, 126, 229, 249

- L
- laboratory, 67 et seq.  
**Laibach**, 210, 243  
*Lamium*, 20  
**Lamprecht**, 28, 234  
**Landauer**; **Fell** and **L.**, 256  
**La Rue**, 45, 47, 233, 235; **L.** and **Avery**, 45, 233; **Avery** and **L.**, 50, 219, 245  
 lateral meristems, 48  
 lead, toxicity of, 92  
 leaf-mesophyll, cultivation of, 27, 43  
 leaf-primordia, cultivation of, 219  
**Le Fanu**, 210, 253  
 legume nodules, 199  
**Lehmann**, 211, 254  
 lens, origin of in amphibian eye, 15  
**Leonian** and **Lilly**, 188, 243  
 leucine, impurities in, 100  
 leucocytes, 224, 225  
**Lewis**, **K. H.**, and **McCoy**, 199, 249  
**Lewis**, **M. R.**, 22, 25, 34, 90, 96, 238, 240; **L.** and **Lewis**, **W. H.**, 22, 34, 90, 131, 149, 238  
**Lewis**, **W. H.**, 22, 24, 74, 81, 90, 147, 238, 258; **L.** and **Lewis**, **M. R.**, 22, 229  
 Lianes, 48  
 Liebig's meat extract, use in nutrients, 31, 32, 100  
**Lilly**; **Leonian** and **L.**, 188, 243  
 limb-buds, vertebrate, 2  
 line graphs, use of, 174  
 linear increments, as measure of growth, 159  
**Locke**, 90, 238  
 Locke's solution, 90  
**Loeb**, 32, 79, 229, 249, 250  
**Loo**, **S. W.**; **Loo**, **T. L.**, and **L.**, 34, 100, 243  
**Loo**, **T. L.**, and **Loo**, **S. W.**, 34, 100, 243  
 loss of function, 4  
**Lund**, 217, 245; **Rosene** and **L.**, 217, 251  
*Lupinus albus*, 234, 242, 245
- M
- lymph, use as nutrient fluid, 10, 21  
**MacDougall**, 44, 250; **M.** and **Shreve**, 44, 260  
 macrophage, 30  
 magnesium, 92, 96, 185  
 magnesium sulfate, 103, 104, 105  
 maize roots, 98  
 malignancy, origin of, 221  
 maltose, 95  
*Malus*, 252  
**Malyshev**, 33, 95, 131, 144, 158, 231  
**Maneval**; **Robbins** and **M.**, 32, 95, 144, 157, 232, 246  
 manganese, 92  
 manganese sulfate, 103, 104, 105  
 mannose, 95  
 manometer for measuring root pressure, 196, 197, 198  
*Marattia*, 125  
**Marotto**, 34, 231  
**Marth**; **Gardner** and **M.**, 211, 253  
**Mason** and **Phillis**, 94, 260  
**Maximow**, 81, 131, 258  
 Maximow embryological watch glass, 81  
**Mayer**, 33, 237  
**McClary**, 97, 245; **Robbins**, **White**, **V. B.**, **M.**, and **Bartley**, 93, 237  
**McCoy**; **Lewis**, **K. H.**, and **M.**, 199, 249  
 measurement, methods, 128, 154 et seq.  
 meat extract, Liebig's, as nutrient, 31, 32, 100  
 media, 90 et seq.  
 media room, 68 et seq.  
 medullary ray parenchyma, proliferative capacity of, 43, 48  
 medullary rays, 58, 125  
 megaspore-mother-cell, 2  
 melanotic epithelium, of amphibia, 30  
**Melchers**, 212, 254

- mercuric chloride, as disinfectant, 119  
 meristematic function, retention of, 58  
 meristematic regions, 57  
 meristematic tissues, 207, 215  
 meristems, 44 et seq., 59  
 meristems, intercalary, 48  
 meristems, lateral, 48  
 meristems, terminal, 50  
 metastatic tumors, 221  
 methionine, as impurity in leucine, 100  
 mica cover glasses, 150  
 migration of cells, 148, 158  
 migration rate of viruses, 200  
 Moebius, 58, 125, 235  
 mobility of cell surfaces, 11  
 Molliard, 33, 47, 125, 235  
 monocotyledonous plants, 94  
 monosaccharides, 95  
 morphogenesis, 3-12, 13, 14, 15, 209 et seq.  
 mosaic diseases, 199-202  
 motility of cells, 11  
 Muckenfuss; Rivers, Haagen, and M., 184, 259  
 Mueller, 100, 156, 240, 260  
*Musa seminiifera*, 45  
 mustard, 55  
 mustard roots, 105
- N
- Nagao, 99, 245, 246  
 nasal scissors, 82  
 Naylor, 44, 125, 250; N. and Johnson, B., 44, 125, 250; N. and Sperry, 44, 125, 250  
 necrotic lesions, 194, 201  
 nerve fibrils, origin of, 183, 209  
 neuroblast, 21  
 niacin (see nicotinic acid)  
 nickel chloride, 105  
*Nicotiana*, callus cultures, 53, 207, 208, 214, 215, 223-226  
*Nicotiana glutinosa*, 201  
 nicotinic acid, 97, 98, 100, 103, 104, 105  
 nitrates, 112  
 nitrogen, 92  
 nitrogenous materials, 93  
 Nobécourt, 33, 34, 36, 50, 96, 97, 99, 218, 229, 233, 246, 260; N. and Dusseau, 34, 199, 250  
 nodules, bacterial, formation on legumes, 199  
 notebooks, 129, 168  
 nucleated cells, cultivation of, 44  
 nutrient concentrations, sensitivity to, 57, 185  
 nutrient salts, 92, 93  
 nutrients, 90 et seq.
- O
- oak, cultivation of cambium, 123  
 oak, white, 55  
 obligate parasites, cultivation of, 194, 199  
 Okado, 58, 250  
 oligodynamic organic substances, 96  
 omission of nutrient constituents, 110, 111  
 optimum concentrations, 185  
 optimum temperatures, 76  
 orchids, undifferentiated embryos of, 46  
 organic complexes, in nutrients, 22, 90, 91, 100, 101  
 organic materials, 93 et seq.  
 organic nitrogen, 99  
 organism as a whole, 7, 29  
*Ornithogalum*, 20  
 osmotic agents, 94  
 osmotic value, 57  
 ovaries, cultivation of tissues from, 57, 125  
 Overbeek, van, 99, 210, 211, 246, 254; O. and Bonner, J., 99, 246; O., Conklin, and Blakeslee, 27; Blakeslee and O., 220  
 ovules, immature, cultivation of, 58  
 oxygen, 92  
 oxygen gradients, effect on differentiation, 194, 218  
 oxygen-hydrogen gradients, 217

## P

- Paál**, 210, 219, 254  
 palisade cells, cultivation of, 20  
**Palladin**, 104, 260  
 parasites, facultative and obligate, cultivation of, 194, 199-202  
 parenchyma, cortical, medullary ray, xylem, retention of meristematic function, 43, 44, 58  
**Parker**, 29, 67, 71, 75, 119, 131, 133, 143, 148, 149, 151, 152, 158, 210, 229, 258; **Fischer and P.**, 143, 210, 257  
 pathogens, facultative and obligate, cultivation of, 194, 199-202  
 pathology, 194 et seq.  
 patterns, developmental (morphogenetic), 7  
 pea root, 105  
 pea seeds, digest of, as nutrient, 31  
 peaches, hybrid, 45  
**Pearsall and Priestley**, 217, 250  
**Pelée**; **Thielman and P.**, 99, 244  
 pellicle, of animal cell, mobility of, 11  
 pellicle, of plant cell, rigidity of, 9  
*Peperomia*, 28  
*Peperomia hispidula*, 46, 47, 260  
*Peperomias*, undifferentiated embryos in, 46, 47  
 pepsin, 101  
 peptic digests, 90, 101  
 peptone, in nutrients, 31, 101  
 percentages, use of 172, 173  
 pericycle, retention of meristematic function by, 43, 125  
 Petri-dish cultures, 132  
 petroleum oil, toxicity of, 92  
**Pfeiffer**, 28, 148, 235, 260  
 pH, 57, 218  
 phagocytosis, 11  
 phanerogamic parasites, 202  
*Phaseolus vulgaris*, 242  
 phelloderm, as material for cultures, 125  
 phellogens, 48  
**Phillis; Mason and P.**, 94, 260  
 phloem exudate, as nutrient, 27  
 phloem parenchyma, meristematic character of, 43  
 phloem sap, 9  
 phosphatase, 184  
 phosphates, 112  
 phosphorus, 92  
 photosynthesis, 20, 189  
 phototropic response, role of auxin in, 210  
 phyllocalines, 212  
 physiologically sterile plants, 45, 220  
 pierced slide, 80, 81, 82, 149  
 pigmentation of amphibian embryos, 14, 15  
 pine, cultivation of cambium of, 123  
*Pisum*, 28  
 pith, meristematic capacity of, 43, 58  
 pith cells, cultivation of, 20  
 placental tissue, cultivation of, 58  
 planimeter, use in measuring growth, 158  
 plant extracts, toxicity of, 27  
**Plantefol**, 189, 246; **P. and Gautheret**, 189, 246  
 plasma, use as nutrient, 21, 90  
 plasmolytic value, 94  
 plasmoptysis, 182, 194  
 plastids, 193  
 plumule, rooting of, 48, 50  
 polarity, 5-7, 217, 218  
 polyembryony, causes of, 220  
*Polypodium*, 28  
 poplar, cultivation of cambium, 123  
*Populus nigra*, 19  
*Portulaca oleracea*, cultivation of embryos, 54  
 potassium, 92  
 potassium, effect of deficiency of, 188

- potassium chloride, 103, 104, 105  
 potassium dichromate, 71  
 potassium iodide, 103, 104, 105  
 potassium nitrate, 103, 104, 105  
 potassium phosphate, acid, 105  
 potato tuber cultures, 124  
*Pothos celatocaulis*, 19  
 Prat, 27, 28, 260  
 "Precision," still, 70  
 preparation of nutrients, 102 et seq.  
 Priestley, 48, 217, 250; P. and Swingle, 48, 250; Pearsall and P., 217, 250  
 proboscis, insect, 218  
 procambial strands, technique of excision, 123  
 procambial tissues, 48, 49  
 procambium, cultivation of, 49  
 procumbent habit, auxin a factor in, 211  
 protein-N, measurement of, 156, 157  
 proteoses as nutrients, 101  
*Prunus avium*, 251  
*Pulmonaria*, 20  
 "pulvis fulminans," 66  
 Putnam, G. P., and Son, 42  
 pyridines, 97  
 pyridoxine, 98, 100, 103, 104  
 pyrimidine, 97
- Q
- qualitative reactions, 186 et seq.  
 quartz cover glasses, 151  
 quartz still, 70  
*Quercus alba*, 55
- R
- rabbit's eye, plant callus in, 224, 225  
 racks, for cover glasses, 130, 152  
 radish roots, 105  
*Rana esculenta*, 15, 257  
*Rana palustris*, 14  
*Rana sylvatica*, 14  
 Razdorskii, 45, 233  
 Rechinger, 19, 20, 235  
 records, 129, 168 et seq.  
 redox-potential, 218  
 regeneration, 6, 19, 30  
 Reiche, 58, 126, 254  
 reimplantation of tumors, 221  
 replications, 165 et seq.  
 respiration, 189  
 re-utilization of nutrient constituents, 144  
 rhizocaline, 212  
*Rhoeo*, 28  
 Richards, 71, 72, 260  
 Riker and Berge, 199, 250  
 Ringer, 90, 239  
 Ringer's solution, 90  
 rings, brass, as culture chambers, 81, 149  
 Rivers, Haagen, and Muckenfuss, 184, 259; R. and Ward, 184, 259  
 Robbins, 27, 32, 33, 34, 36, 50, 56, 74, 82, 94, 98, 100, 101, 105, 131, 143, 157, 185, 209, 220, 231, 240, 243, 250; R. and Bartley, 35, 95, 96, 97, 133, 157, 185, 239, 243; R. and Maneval, 32, 95, 144, 157, 232, 246; R. and Schmidt, 35, 95, 98, 105, 133, 157, 158, 185, 232, 243, 244; R. and White, V. B., 27, 35, 95, 133, 203, 232, 240; R., Bartley, and White, V. B., 35, 231; R., White, V. B., McClary, and Bartley, 93, 237  
 Robison; Fell and R., 256, 257  
 roller tube cultures, 146, 147  
 root caps, 61  
 root cultures, 117-121  
 root hairs, 62, 63  
 root nodules, auxin a factor in formation of, 211  
 root pressure, 172, 190, 191, 196, 197, 198  
 root tips, cultivation of, 31, 50, 56  
 rooting response, 188  
 roots, adventitious, 50, 88, 120  
 roots, localization of initiation, 211, 212  
 Rosene, 190, 217, 246; R. and Lund, 217, 251

- rust infections, 199  
**Rytz; Schopfer and R.**, 76, 244
- S
- Sachs**, 220, 251, 254  
**Saeger**, 76, 246  
*Saintpaulia*, 28  
*Saintpaulia ionantha*, 250  
 "sal volatile oleosum," 66  
*Salix capraea*, cultures of cambium, 116, 123  
*Salix capraea*, respiration of cambium cultures, 189  
 "salt-cellars" (culture dishes), 132  
 salt mixtures in nutrient solutions, 90  
 saltations, 133  
 salts, 71, 92, 93  
*Sambucus nigra*, grafts in cambium cultures, 213  
 sand furnaces, 66  
 sap, xylem, as nutrient, 27  
 scalariform cells, differentiation of, 194, 208  
 scalpels, 82, 83, 85  
 scar tissue, 2  
**Scheitler**, 28, 48, 148, 151, 235  
**Schilling**, 43, 251  
**Schleiden**, 5, 8, 230  
**Schmidt; Robbins and S.**, 35, 95, 98, 105, 133, 157, 158, 185, 232, 243, 244  
**Schmucker**, 27, 43, 91, 235  
**Schneider**, 230  
**Schopfer and Rytz**, 76, 244  
**Schotté**, 30, 258  
**Schwanitz**, 7, 251  
**Schwann**, 4, 5, 8, 230  
 scions, 7  
 scissors, cystoscopic, 83  
 scissors, Gruenewald, 82  
 scissors, Heyman, 82  
 scissors, iridectomy, 82  
 scissors, nasal, 82  
 seasonal variations in growth, 77, 78  
 secondary thickening, 159  
 secondary tumors, 221  
 seed primordia, cultivation of, 125, 151, 206  
 seedling roots, as culture material, 117  
 segregation of functions, 4  
 segregation of tissues and cells for study, 5  
**Seifriz**, 62  
 Seitz filters, 107  
 semi-solid culture media, 101, 102  
*Sempervivum*, 28  
 serum, as nutrient, 90  
 serum bottles, 73  
**Shapiro; Brachet and S.**, 218, 256  
 shock of excision, 48  
**Shreve; MacDougal and S.**, 44, 260  
 silica still, 70  
 silver still, 70  
 sink, 69  
**Sinnott and Bloch**, 44, 58, 126, 251  
**Skoog; Thimann and S.**, 99, 210, 255, 260  
 slides, depression (hollow-ground), 130, 149  
 slides, pierced, 80, 81, 130, 149  
**Smith, L. H.**, 28, 47, 251  
**Smith, R. S.; Knudson and S.**, 32, 239  
**Snow**, 210, 211, 254  
 soap, 71  
 sodium, 92  
 sodium acid phosphate, 103, 104, 105  
 sodium chloride, 176  
 sodium pyrophosphate, 71  
 sodium sulfate, 103, 104  
 softener, water, 70  
 "soft" glass cover glasses, 150  
 soil solution, 56  
*Solanum*, 28  
*Solanum tuberosum*, 233  
*Solidago*, 253  
 somatic cells, totipotency of, 30  
**Spemann**, 30, 219, 258; **S. and Geinitz**, 219, 259

- Sperry; Naylor and S.**, 44, 125, 250  
*Spirodela*, 246  
 squash fruit, aseptic seeds from, 118  
 squash stem, cultivation of procambium, 49  
 stamen hairs, cultivation of, 20  
**Stanley**, 200, 259  
 starch, resorption of, 193  
 statistical analysis, 165-168  
 statistical significance of results, 166  
 stele, 195  
*Stellaria media*, 193, 235  
 stem tips, 50  
 sterilization of nutrients, 106, 107  
 sterilizer, Arnold, 69, 107  
**Steward, Berry, and Broyer**, 56, 246  
 stills, 69  
 stinging hairs, cultivation of, 20  
**Stingl**, 45, 58, 233, 251  
 stipular gemmae of *Marattia*, as culture material, 125  
 stock cultures, 113, 132  
 stomatal guard cells, cultivation of, 20  
 stone cells, 222  
 stone fruits, 45  
**Stout and Arnon**, 70, 93, 237; **Arnon and S.**, 70, 93, 237  
**Strangeways**, 230  
**Stukeley**, 66  
 substrata, nutritive (see nutrients)  
 sucrose, 95, 96, 103, 105, 106, 185  
**Suessenguth; Essenbeck and S.**, 45, 233  
 sugar, 71  
 sulfur, 70, 92  
 sulfuric acid, 71, 105  
 sunflower, cultivation of callus from, 52  
 sunflower roots, 105  
 suspensor, 219  
**Swingle; Priestley and S.**, 48, 250  
*Symphoricarpos*, 28
- T
- tap water, 70, 92  
*Taraxacum*, 220  
 temperature, optimal, 76, 144, 145  
 temperature effects, 57, 76, 144, 145  
 temperature gradients, 218  
 terminal growing points, 50  
 terminal meristems, 50 et seq.  
 test-tube cultures, 131, 146, 147  
**Theophrastus**, 42, 260  
 thiamin, 97, 100, 103, 104, 106, 108, 185  
 thiazole, 97  
**Thielman (Tauja-Thielman)**, 28, 95, 235, 239; **T. and Bérziñ**, 94, 247; **T. and Peléce**, 98, 99, 244  
**Thimann**, 99, 211, 244, 255; **T. and Koepfli**, 210, 255; **T. and Skoog**, 99, 210, 255, 260; **T. and Went**, 210, 244  
*Thunbergia*, 28  
 tile, for walls, 75  
 "tinctura metallorum," 66  
 tissue broth, as nutrient, 90  
 tissue culture, 9, 12, 35  
 tissue juices, toxicity of, 27  
 titanium sulfate, 105  
 titration of virus concentration, 200, 201  
 tobacco, cultivation of procambium, 49  
 tobacco callus, 105  
 tobacco fruits, aseptic seeds from, 118  
 tomato roots, 40, 62, 64, 98, 105, 113, 179, 180, 181, 182  
 tomato seeds, 118  
 totipotency, 4, 8, 12, 30, 35, 44, 212  
 toxicity of gas, 75, 76  
 toxins, inorganic, 202  
 toxins, organic, 202

*Tradescantia*, 20, 28  
 transfer room, 74-76  
 transplantation, 7, 8, 15, 30, 219  
 traumatin, 114  
 trays, enamel and galvanized, 72  
 trees, cambium, cultivation of, 49  
 trees, cambium, cultures of, 127, 213  
 trees, cambium, excision of, 121-123  
 trichomes, loss of meristematic function in, 44  
*Trifolium repens*, 55  
*Triticum*, 28  
*Triturus torosus*, 257  
 tropic response, auxin as factor in, 212  
 tropisms, 192  
**Tukey**, 45, 58, 73, 125, 220, 233, 235, 251  
 tumefacient property of cells, 221  
 tumor metabolism, 184  
 tumors, 221  
**Tyrode**, 90, 239  
 Tyrode's solution, 90  
 tyrosinase, 193, 205  
 tyrosine, 194, 205

## U

*Ulex*, 28, 44, 101, 235  
*Ulmus campestris*, 248  
 ultraviolet light, use as sterilizing agent, 118  
 undifferentiated tissues, cultivation of, 34, 133  
 ungerminated embryos as culture material, 46-48  
 uniformity of cultures, 133  
*Urtica*, 20  
 "Uspulin," as disinfectant, 119

## V

vaccines, cultivation of, 184  
 van Tiegham cell, 81, 149  
 variability, 133 et seq.  
 vascular strands, disorganized, 216

vascular strands, organization of in culture, 190  
 vascular tissue, importance for regeneration, 19  
 vaseline for sealing slide cultures, 151, 152  
*Vicia faba*, 250, 252, 255  
*Viola*, 28  
**Virchow**, 5, 259  
 virus molecules, determination of shape, 79  
 viruses, cultivation of, 120, 199, 200  
*Viscum*, 202  
 vitamin B<sub>1</sub>, 96, 105 (see thiamin)  
 vitamin B<sub>6</sub>, 98, 105, 108, 172 (see pyridoxine)  
 vitamins, 93, 96, 99  
 vitreous sink, 69  
**Vöchting**, 5, 7, 8, 30, 217, 251  
**Vogelaar and Erlichman**, 22, 71, 90, 239, 244, 261  
**Vogt**, 218, 230, 259

## W

wall color, 75  
**Warburg**, 184, 189, 247; **W. and Kubowitz**, 184, 247  
**Ward; Rivers and W.**, 184, 259  
 washing of air, 75  
 washing glassware, 71, 72  
 watch glasses, Maximow, 81  
 water, distillation of, 70, 92  
 water, filtration, 92  
 water, purity, 70, 91, 92  
 water softener, 70, 92  
**Wehnelt**, 57, 125, 126, 244  
 weight vs. length (as measure of growth), 159  
**Weiss**, 259  
**Went**, 210, 211, 212, 219, 220, 255; **Bouillenne, R., and W.**, 210, 248; **Thimann and W.**, 210, 244  
**Werckmeister**, 45, 234  
 Westinghouse immersion heater, 83  
 wheat roots, 105  
 white clover, root cap, 61



- white oak, 55  
White, P. R., 31, 34, 36, 39, 45,  
49, 50, 53, 54, 55, 57, 58, 61,  
63, 64, 76, 77, 92, 93, 95, 96,  
97, 98, 99, 100, 101, 105, 118,  
119, 120, 122, 123, 125, 131,  
133, 139, 144, 145, 146, 151,  
159, 175, 176, 180, 184, 185,  
188, 190, 191, 192, 193, 194,  
195, 196, 197, 198, 200, 202,  
203, 206, 207, 208, 209, 214,  
217, 218, 220, 223, 226, 230,  
232, 233, 234, 235, 237, 239,  
240, 244, 247, 251, 252, 259;  
W. and Braun, 52, 124, 221,  
252; Braun and W., 221, 259  
White, V. B.; Robbins and W.,  
27, 35, 95, 133, 203, 232, 240;  
Robbins, Bartley, and W., 35,  
231; Robbins, W., McClary,  
and Bartley, 93, 237  
Wilcoxon; Zimmerman and W.,  
255  
Wilhelm, 58, 252  
Willmer, 230  
willow, cambium cultures, 105,  
123  
willow, polarity in, 7  
Wilson, 119, 260  
Winkler, 58, 252  
wire racks for cover glasses, 130,  
152  
wound healing, 2, 21, 43  
wound hormones, 114  
  
X  
xylem fibers, loss of meriste-  
matic function by, 44  
xylem parenchyma, proliferative  
capacity, 58  
xylem sap, 9, 27  
  
Y  
yeast, brewer's vs. baker's, 101  
yeast, extract as nutrient, 32,  
100, 105  
  
Z  
Zimmerman, 56, 247; Z. and  
Hitchcock, 210, 255; Z. and  
Wilcoxon, 210, 255; Z.,  
Crocker, and Hitchcock, 210,  
255  
zinc, 70, 92, 96  
zinc sulfate, 103, 104, 105  
*Zizania aquatica*, 233

